

A THESIS
(
Presented to the Faculty of Graduate Studies, and Research of ${ }^{\circ}$
McGill University
in Partial Fulfiliment
of the Requirements
for the Degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY


McGILL UNIVERSITY DEPARTMENT OF LINGUISTICS

MARCH, 1976

- Hanny Feurer 1977


QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS IN
MOPHAWK CONVERSATION
by
HANNY FEURER

ABSTRACT
This diseertation surveys question-answer patterns in Mohawk conversation. After discussing some theoretical issues, we begin with a morpho-syntactic description of questions, and then expand the description to the level of discourse. Although our approach is modelled on generative semantics, we depart from it in significant ways, in order. to account for the discourse behaviour of questions. Topics treated Within the discourde are the performative, discourse deixes, presuppositions, and focus. Application of these elemente reaults in an overview of question types and of answer patterno observed in Mohavk. We conclude with a sociolinguistic study of question functions, comparing them in everyday and classroom converaations.

The aim of the atudy is to contribute aome knowledge on Mohawk within a relatively unexplored domain-that of the conversation. In naxrowing its acope to question-answer eequencea, wa illustrate how linguistic elements axe correlated to extralinguistic components, e.grsociolinguiatic functiona, in verbal interaction.

QUESTIONS ET REPONSES EN CONVERSATION MAHAWK

- par

4

RESUME
Ce travall est consacré à l'étude des patrons sous-jacents aux questions et réponses dans la conversation mohawk. Après discussion de certains problèmes théoriques, nous donnons une description morpho-syntaxique des questions, pour ensuite passer à une description des questionsréponses au niveau du discours. Notre approche théorique s'ingère dans : la tradition de la sémantique générative; cepandant, nous nous en écartons passablement afin' d'arriver $a$ une description plus adéquate des structures de questions à l'interieur du discours. Nous avons traité les aspects:. performance, déictiques, présuppositions, et focus dus discours. Il s'en dégage d'une part une typologie générale des questions, et d'autre part une charactérisation des réponses du mohawk. Nous terminons ce travall par une ētude sociolinguistique comparative de fonctions des questions observées dans les conversations courantes et dans les conversations en classe.

Notre contribution a conafsté dans l'étude du mohawk au point de vue conversăation, domaine assez_peu êtudié. En nous limitant aux séquences question-réponse, nous avons illustré comant, dans une interaction verbale, les éléments linguistiques peuvent être mis en corrélation avec des facteurs extralinguistiques, comme par exemple les fonctions sociolinguistiques.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

- This study ${ }^{\text {霛ould never have been possible in the present form }}$ without the hospitality, the confidence, and the patience of these my Mohawk friends in Kanesatake: the Gabriels on Centre Road, Patricia Gabriel in the village, and Minnie Ne1son at the Bay. I owe them special thanks for having shared with me their most precious heritage-their Indian language. I would also like to thank numerous other Indians: the Band Council members in Kanesatake who so generously lent their community hall to me for study purposes; the elementary schools and their teaching staff in St. Regis who permitted me to observe Mohawk lessons; and last but not least, the different consultants in Caughnawaga, namely, Frank Natawe,' Sister Dorothy Lazare, and Annette Jacobs who were never too tired to advise me with their linguistic knowledge in the analysis of some structural obscurities.

I wish to thank both of my thesis directors, Rose-Marie Weber for her initial guidance before her departure from McGill, and Nicole Domingue for her encouraging attitude, stimulating suggestions, and for the interest and time she gave toward my research.

To fellow linguists at McGill and the Université du Québec à Montreal go my aincere thanks for comments and critiques, and for their friendship during the course of my research. To the Département de 1 in guistique at UqAM, I owe much gratefulness for the diverse internal arrangements made to expedite this undertaking.

I wish to express my gratitude to Marianne Williams and Judith McA'Nulty whase expertises in different domains vere most helpful. Spe-
cial thanks and credits go to Nora Wales and Barry Martin for their long hours and faithfulness as assistants, typists, editors, and above all as friends which truly made this thesis a combined effort.

Finally, I am indebted to the Université du Quebec à Chicoutimi for a research contract with the Centre de Recherche du Moyen Nord in 1972-1973, and to the National Museum of Man in Ottawa for a research grant in 1973-1974.

I hope that the findings of this project, based on that which was entrusted to me by my Indian friends, shall repay them in some small measure.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page
$\theta$ ..... v
Liat of Tablea ..... Ki.11
List of Figures ..... xiv
Key to Figureo ..... $x v$
Nocaciono and Abbreviationo ..... xvii
CHAPTER ONE: INTRODUCIION ..... 1
.1.1 Statement of Surpooe ..... 1
1.2 Methodology ..... 4
1.2.1 Generel Beclgeround ..... 4
1.2.2 Fioldratk ..... 5
1.2.3. Deta and Methodo of Data Acquioftion ..... 6
/ 1.2.3.1 Conoultants ..... 6
1.2.3.2 E1tcitation Procedures ..... 7
1.2.3.3 Collection of Convereationo ..... 8
1.2.3.4 Data Analyois ..... 9
1.3 A Bricf Hivtory of Kanecatake (OLa) ..... 10
1.4 Basic Mohank Gemmex ..... 10
1.4.1 Mord Order ..... 10
1.4.2 Morphology ..... 12
1.4.3 Simpla and Complen Utexoncea ..... 15
1.4.4 Phonology ..... 18
1.5 Outlinc ..... 19
Pootnocen to Chapter One ..... 20
CHAPTER THO: THEOEETICAL FRAMEGOEL OF QUESTION-ANSMEI MWMATIONS ..... 22
2.1 Incroduction ..... 22
2.2 Filleore ${ }^{\text {a }}$ Thcorctical Framevork ..... 22
2.3 Theoretical Fwomenork of Question-Anover Pomantions ..... 23
Footnotes to Chapter Tho ..... 30
Page
Chapter threr: fohank miterrogatives ..... 32
3.1 Incroduction: Ineorrogactve Surfaco Foaturco ..... 32
3.2 Claooxecatica of troharte Quedetiono ..... 35
3.2.1 Diojurcelve Quoctioño ..... 35
3.2.1.1 ' x or notex' Qucotiono ..... 35
3.2.1.2 ' S or K ' Quenedoc ..... 36
3.6 .2 Wi guoct 10 m ..... 37
3.2.3 Dioluactive and m Guceciono, th ..... 38
3.3 Idonctickentan of millompherea ..... 38
3.3.2 ind Momplece ha? and Cotcgoricol puolifloso ..... 39
 ..... 42
3.3.3 me torphere oh and Cotogorical Ounlistore ..... 69
3.3 .1 . Wh homphaca uhies? ..... 53
3.3.5 Wooedea Ford Len?te ..... 54
 ..... 5\%
3.3 .6 .1 Thzch ..... 55
3.3 .6 .2 Thas cat tho ..... 59
13.3 .6 .3 Thay ..... 61
3.3.6.6 सtoiz ..... 62
3.4 Syneas of Kohcit Diojunctive Quonetions ..... 67
To '3. 1.2 Diojuncive Queotion Type ' X or not- $\mathrm{F}^{\prime}$ ' ..... 68
3.4.2 Diojunctive Quoceion Type ' X or $\mathrm{K}^{\prime}$ ..... 72
Footnotes to Clapter Three ..... 78
CHAFTER FOUR: DISCOURSE TRARE ..... 83
4.1 Incroduction ..... 83
4.2 Spoch Ace Condesions ..... 83
4.2.1 The Perfomative (Hyperecatonce) ..... 83
4.2.2 Ducousco Datacu ..... 85

## Page

6.3 Proguppoaitiono and Speech Act ..... 90
6.3.1 Preouppooiciono: Shared Knoviedge ..... 92
夕.3.2 Elamants Unohared by Spoakoz and Adereocec ..... 93
4.3.3 Relacive Soctal Context ..... 94
4at Discourse Presuppostetons ..... 94
4.5 Preouppoajeion and Focua ..... 96
4.5.1 Focus and Aodertion ..... 97
4.5.2 Pocus cnd Clefting ..... 98
4.5.3 Toces and Infommetion Reducetion ..... 100
Footnotes to Chapect Four ..... 104
CUAPRER RTVE: QUESTTON TYPES ..... 107
5.1 Incroduceton ..... 107
5.2 Unraxliced quostion Thpes ..... 107
5.2.3. Dlágructive Qucostone ..... 108
5.2.1.1 'x ox notari quocelons ..... 108
5.2 .1 .2 'S ot $x$ ' Queotiono ..... 111
5.2 .2 TIL Queacions ..... 112
5.2 .3 Connler: Quesetons ..... 118
5.3 incticd Quontion Types ..... 119
5.3.1. Indrace queselono ..... 120
5.3.2 quoted qucostons ..... 122
5.3.3 Condiclopel Guootiono ..... 126
5.3.6 Echo questions128
5.3.5 quiz Quontions ..... 131
5.3.6 Rhoserical Quentions ..... 137
5.3 .7 Queclasetue Quegelone ..... 139
5.3.0 Mremperoctvo Queastona ..... 144
S.3.6.3 Thenporaedve ..... 1.45
5.3.0.2 Tnpoctelve ..... 145
Page
5.3.9 Tag Queotions ..... 147
5.3.9.1 Agreement Requeaced ..... 149
5.3.9.2 Information Given' ..... 151
5.3.9.3 Opinion Requested ..... 153
5.3.9.4 Explanation and/or, Agrectacnt Requested ..... 155
Footnotes to Chapter Five ..... 159
n
CHAPTER SIX: ANSUERS TO QUESTIONS ..... 161
6.1 Introduction ..... 161
6.2 Claoolitcation of Anowers ..... 168
6.2.1 Poooible Anovera ..... 170
6.2.1.1 Direct Answera ..... 171
6.2.1.2 Additions ..... $+177$
6.2.1.3 Partial Anowers ..... 179
6.2.2 Evarion ..... 1,80
6.2.3 Conrecuve Anoners ..... 184
6.2.3.1 Correction of Shared Inowledge ..... 185
6.2.3.2 Corrcction of Pooseoston of Lixoviedge ..... 187
6.2 .3 .3 Correction of Porer to Convoy-Knovlodge ..... 188
6.2.3.4 Coxrection of Listivation to Convey Knonledge' ..... 190
6.2.3.5 Corrcetion of Propoultionel Content ..... 191
6.2 .4 Confesaion of Ignoronce ..... 192.
6.2.5 Replico to Anovers ..... 193
6.2.6 Incorrect Anovers ..... 294
6.2.6.1 Self-Impooed Correction ..... 194
6.2.6.2 Coxrection Tuposed by the Questioner ..... 195
G.2.6.3 Correction Imposed by a Third Parey ..... 197
Poocnoces EO. Chaptex Six: ..... 199
Page
CHAPTER SEVEN: TOWARDS A SOCIOLINGUISTIC ANALYSIS OF QUESTION AND ANSWER USAGE ..... 200
7.1 Introduction ..... 200
7.2 Methodology ..... 203
7.3 Implications of a Functional Analysis ..... 207
7.4 Functions Within Everyday Conversations ..... 209
7.4.1 FI: Request for Information ..... 210
7.4.2 FII: Request for Confirmation ..... 213
7.4.2.1 Tag Questions ..... 215
$\star$ 7.4.2.2 Disfunctive Questions ..... 216
7.4.2.3 Queclarative Questions ..... 217
7.4.2.4 Rhetorical questions ..... 217
7.4.2.5 Echo Questions ..... 218
7.4.3 F III: Request for (a) Further Explanation, and/or
(b) Further Conversation ..... 218
7.4.3.1 Tag Questions ..... 220
7.4.3.2 Queclarative Questions ..... 222
7.4.3.3 Echo Questions ..... 223
7.4.3.4 Yes-No Questions ..... 224
7.4.4 F IV: Request for Repetition: ..... 224
7.4.5 F V: Request for (a) Action; and/or
(b) Change of Action ..... 228
7.4.5.1 WH Questions ..... 228
7.4.5.2 Whimperative Question Types ..... 230
7.4.6 F VI: Request for Delay ..... 232
7.4.7 F VII: Request for a Permitting Action ..... 234
7.5 Functions Within Classroom Conversations ..... 236
7.5.1 F I: Request far Proof of Knowledge ..... 238
7.5.1.1 WH Questions ..... 238
7.5.1.2 Disjunctive Questions ..... 240
7.5.1.3 Conditional Questions ..... 241
7.5.1.4 Quiz Questions ..... ᄃ243
Page
-7.5.2 F II: Request for ${ }^{2}$ Confirmation ..... 243
7.5.2.1 Tag Questions and Queclarative Questions ..... 245
7.5.2.2 Disjunctive Questions ..... 248
7.5.2.3 Echo Questions ..... 249
7.5.2.4 Rhetorical Questions ..... 250
7.5.3 F III: Request for Information ..... 251
7.5.3.1 WH Questions ..... 251
7.5.3.2 Disjunctive Questions ..... 253
7.5.4 F IV: Request for Delay ..... 254
7.5.4.1 Yes-No Questions ..... 254
7.5.4.2 WH Questions ..... 256
7.5.5 F V: Request for Repetition ..... 257
'7.5.6 F VI: Request for (a) Further Explanation, and/or (b) Further donversation ..... 261
7.5.6.1 Tag Questions ..... 263
7.5.6.2 Unmarked Questions ..... 264
7.5.7 F VII: , Request for Imitation ..... 265
7.5.7.1 Yes-No Questions ..... 265
7.5.7.2 Whimperatives ..... 267
7.5.8 F VIII: Request for (a) Action, and/or
(b) Change of Action ..... 268
7.5.9 FIX: Request for Politeness ..... 270
7.6 Sumary ..... 272
Footnotes to Chapter Seven ..... 275
CHAPTER EIGHT: CONCLUSION ..... 278
Footnotes to Chapter Eight ..... 283
1
BIBLIOGRAPHY ..... 284
Appendix I: History of Kanesatake ..... 300
Footnotes to Appendix I ..... 307

## LIST OF TABLES

C

Table
I. WH Morpheme ka? and Categorical Qualifiers .......... 40
II. WH Morpheme to and Categorical Qualifiers ........... 43

III, WH Morpheme oh and Categorical Qualifiers ............. 49
IV. Comparison of Derivational Rules by S, S, \& P and Langacker ..................................... 79
$\circ$

e

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure Page
7.1 Everyday Conversation
Function I: Request for Information ..... 211
7.2 Everyday Converaation
Function II: Request for Confirmation ..... 214
7.3 Everyday Conversation
Function III: Request for Further Explanation and/or Further Conversation ..... 219
7.4 Everyday Conversation
Function IV: Request for Repetition ..... 225
7.5 Everyday Conversation
Function V: Request for Action and/or Change of Action ..... 229
7.6 Everyday Conversation
Function VI: Request for Delay ..... 233
7.7 Everyday Conversation
Function VII: Request for a Pemitting Action ..... 235
7.8 Classroom Conversation
Function I: Request for Proof of Knowledge ..... 239
7.9 Classroom Conversation
Function II: Request for Confirmation ..... 244
7.10 Classroom Conversation
Function III: Request for Information ..... 252
7.11 Classroom Conversation
Function IV: ${ }^{\text {R Requeat for Delay }}$ ..... 255
7.12 Classroom Conversation
Function V: Request for Repetition ..... 258
7.13 Classroom Conversation
Function VI: Request for Further Explanation and/or Further Conversation ..... 262
Figure Page
7.14 Clasaroom Conversation
Function VII: Request foŕ Imitation ..... 266
7.15 Claseroom Conversation
Function VIII: Request for Action and/or Change of Action ..... 269
7.16 Claseropm Conversation
Function IX: Request for Politeness ..... 271
7.17 Evaryday and Classroom Conversations
Comparison of Function Types and Thair Relative Frequancies ..... 273

KEY TO FIGURES
To be used with all Figures of Question Types and their respective percentages within Everyday and Clasaroom Functions. On the Figures, the following abbreviations have been utilized:


D8J and Wh are unmarked queation types; tho remaining question types are
marked. In the latter, no distinction is made between DSJ and WH questions. For clarity, the numerical percentages of each question type have been listed to the left of each Figure. Theser percentages are a calculation from the total number of questions within that particular Function. Comment shall bé made at the bottom of each Figure on the distribution frequency of the Function.

The solid bar represents the percentage of question types in everyday conversation, while the bar with diagonal lines represents the percentage of each classroom question type. "Where bars are placed side by aide in Figures 7.9 to 7.15 , they indicate the relative distribution of everyday versus classroom question types within each Function. In Figures 7.9 to 7.15, the frequencies of a given Function in everyday and classroom conversation are nỗt necessarily the same. They are shown in Figure 7.17. In Figure 7.17, arabic numerals take the place of roman numerals used in the text for the various functional categories.

NOTATIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

1. Notations.
(1) (a) Examples are given in a phonologically based Mohawk. orthography (cf. Bonvillain (1973), and Michelson (1973)); parentheses enclose elements that have been deleted; commas indicate a pause;
ellipsis points indicate deletion of the continued utterance.
(b) Interlinear translation is provided for each Mohawk example;
spacing indicates the word boundaries;
hyphens indicate morphemic divisions--they are not intended to be exhaustive nor to be sequentially arranged;
single quotation marks usually enclose the idiomatic translation of a morpheme;
parentheses enclose translations that are either assumed to have been deleted, or that are added in order to render the meaning of translation equivalents (morphemes) unambiguous.

Mohawk examples in the running text are underlined; their English glosses are given within single quotation marks.
(iii) Semantic material is represented by capital letters (cf. Chapters Four and Five).

```
2. Abbreviations.
```

| A. | answer |  | PRF | perfective |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\dot{A}_{\text {d }}$. | delay answer | is | PRFR | performative |
| Ap. | approval |  | PRSP | presupposition |
| C. | correction |  | PRT | partitive |
| 4 |  |  |  |  |
| CLFPT | cleft particle |  | Q | question particle "w |
| DUB | dubitative particle |  | Q. | question |
| EQ. | echo question |  | $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{C}}{ }^{\text {. }}$ | confirmation question |
| F | Function |  | $Q^{\text {d }}$ | delay question |
| FI | feminine/indefinite |  | Q ${ }^{\text {- }}$ | repetition question |
| FN | feminine/neuter |  | R. | response |
| M | masculine |  | REFL | reflexive |
| NEG | negation | : | Rq. | request |
| NOM | nominal particle |  | SER | serial |
| NP | noun phrase |  | St. | statement |
| PL | plural |  | $\stackrel{\square}{\square}$ | utterance |
| PNCT | punctual |  | $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}}$ | discourse utterance |
| PRCD | precondition |  |  | $\cdots \cdots$ |

### 1.1 Statement of Purpose. In the last 25 years, se-

 veral grammatical papers of importance have been written on Iroquoian lan guages. ${ }^{1}$ Their scope of linguistic description has been the sound and word systems and, more rarely, the sentence construction. In no case has the sentence been studied in terms. of its potential anchoring in the context of discourse. It is with a view to this end that we propose the following research:(i) a syneactico-semantic study of question and answer formations in Mohavk conversation (including a section on wh morphemes); an inquiry into sociolinguistic patterns observed in Mohawk question and answer usage in everyday and classroom conversations.

We shall venture into an area that is as yet relatively unknown to linguiste: the sentence withiy the discourse. There is a dearth of material written about the sentence in Iroquoian languages. As well, there is a paucity of information about the sentence in conversations; this holds true for languages in general and Mohawk in particular. Therefore, Inguistic aspects of questions and answers shall be correlated with extralinguistic factors (e.g. sociolinguistic, functions) observed in both everyday and classroom conversations.

In this study, we have attempted to sift through various theoretical arguments that pertain to the analysia of questions and their an-
swers within the discourse, assaying the most valuable contributions. ${ }^{2}$ Of the topics that have been currently discussed on this issue, we have concentrated on those basic to any research into Mohawk question-answer discourse: disjunctive question, wH question, question type, answer and problems related to the discourse such as performative reading, discourse deixis, presuppositions, focus, and ultimately question functions. Whenever necessary, these concepts were enlarged upon and/or modified in order to acçount. for question-answer particularities in Mohawk.

The subject of our research proved more complex than antici-, pated. Although we have operated as much as possible within a slightly modified generative semantics approach (Chapters Four and Five), the result is that the study presents a descriptive overview of Mohawk questions and their answers within conversation, rather than an explanatory one. The structure of utterances, whenever formalized, are simplified, nearsurface representations. Consistent 'deepest level' representations would have been self-defeating for the purpose of one aspect of our study, which is an overview of questions.

Formalization has not always been applied, nor have transformational rules or constraints been regularly stated. The present state of development in discourse gramar is not advanced enough to lend itself to a mified approach. ${ }^{3}$ This factor, as well as our present inadequate knowledge of the structure of Mohawk conversation have prevented us from unifying formalizations. To do 80 would be premature at this stage. Considerably more work will have to be done in the area of semantic repre-
sentation and how it relates (i) to the surface of questions and answers, and (ii) to the discourse structure of question-answer pairs.

The study is thus strictly a preliminary, open-ended enterprise where questions and their answers are described in relation to their usage: The goal of our work being the study of language use, we finally attempted to explore more fully the correlation between question-answer structures and their possible uses. We feel that with our functional study, the discovery of social factors influencing questions and their answers has only been initiated. Foremost in such future work will be the study of social factors such as participants, the role they play, the setting, etc., and the way in which they affect the use and interpretation of functions of questions.

This research attempts to expose the linguistic and sociolinguistic rules underlying question-answer patterns in Mohawk conversation. We shall show that functions of questions in everyday speech differ from those of the classroom setting. Linguistic and social differences found in these patterns might shed light on the difficulty Mohawk children in Kanesatake have at school, even if the children's first language is now English. Perhaps the semantic and social rules they use are Mohawk rather than English; of course, there could be other factors involved too, such as, for example, attitugdes.

Hopefully, some of these findings in everyday conversations will be further investigated and then applied to clasaroom interaction. It is the inalienable right of this country's natives to receive proper instruction in their language in a manner that is in accordance with all aspects
of their way of life. This may imply some radical changes in teaching methods in Native schools.

### 1.2 Methodology.

### 1.2.1 General Background. For one year, I had

 the privilege of visiting different schools in the province of Québec ${ }^{4}$ and obserying the teaching of the Indian students in their own respective mother tongues. Since the early 1970's, a Native language teaching program has been incorporated into most of the elementary schools in Quebec that have a large Indian student population.- The people who teach the Native language to the Indian children are usually members of the respective communities who have a good knowledge of their own tongue. Most of them have had very little teacher training; though all are now taking linguistic and didactic courses under the sponsorship of the Department of Indian Affairs.

The Native language teaching program is concerned with first and second language situations: for the Cree in James Bay, the Cree language is taught as a first language. For the Mohawk children in Kanesatake, the Mohavk language is taught as a second language. In 1973-1974, Mohawk was only taught at the nuraery arid kindergarten levels in Kanesatake. Generally in Quebec, aside from the Native language class, the Indian children were taught either in Eng1ish or French; ${ }^{5}$ in Kanesatake, the teaching language is English.

The asking of questions I have noticed to be one of the most.
frequently used techniques in the teaching of these children. The question was employed to teach new material, and to verify and control the learning process of the students. I have observed that Cree children especially, and also to a lesser degree Montagnais and Mohawk children, have been very hesitant and slow in their responses in the classroom-if there was any response at all.

The Mohawks have been publicly taught in Engliah for at least three generations. In Kanesatake, the present generation under fifteen is the first generation that speaks mostly English. Their parents, with much difficulty, have acquired a certain fluency in English and/or French as their second and/or third language. They have decided to make it easier for their children by teaching them English or French. So they now speak English or French with their chfldren, although most parents speak Mohawk when talking with their own peer group or with older Indian speakers. Most children understand Mohavk, but when parents still speak Mohawk to their children, the children answer back in English.

Assimilation is in progress. For example, one very strong means of re-enforcing the English language and culture is the television. Another is the fact that these Mohawk children have to travel to Provincial schools outaide Kanesatake. Yet, assimilation does not appear to be so rapid at school-for these Mohaw children are slower and more quiet than their white companions, despite their acquisition of the English language.

### 1.2.2 Fleldwork. The research was mostly conducted with

 members of the Oka band in Kanesatake (Oka), Quebec, from February 1973 toAprili 1974. Kanesatalce, besides St. Regis and Caughnawaga, is one of three locactons in Quebec vinere Mohavk, a northern Iroquoian language, is spolcen. Evaryday conversations were recorded in Kanesatake. In April 1974, clasoroom conversations vere collected in St. Regis, since Mohavk vas not yet taught to elemantary school children from Kanesatake. The compilation of data proved to be quick in St. Regis, but both slow and difficult in Kanesatake. At first, vartous prejudices against myeelf as an intruder, made people unavailable as consultants on a regular besis. Through my living with a family, various visits/ulthin the comanity, the participation in some social evento, and the tutoring of a child, a trust relationship slowly coma into being. For cxample, In the beginning of October 1973, the Band Council offered me the use of the coaminity hall for atudy purposes; in December of that year, I found the firge percon who woo willing to work with ma on a regular basis. Hy expericnce confirm that the wore a culture is in danger of being assimilated, the more acute vill be the reaction to outsiders. Researchers will have to adjust their demands according to the needs, fears, and interests of the commuity, fif they vant to help to preserve rather than to degtroy a culcure.

### 1.2.3 Data and Mothodo of Data Acquibition.

### 1.2.3.1 Conoultanto. Iy two regular consultants have

 been two woman, onc in her late fiftes and one in her late thirfies. They are both fluont speakers of Enclioh, French andirioheaft. Occasionalconsultants have been men and women representing the age group between sarly twentfes and early sixties. None of them know how to write Mohawk, although fome of their relatives know the traditional Jesuit writing system.
1.2.3.2 Elicitation Procedures. The first part of my ,
research consisted of studying the gross morphological and syntactic framework of Mohawik as it is spoken in Kanesatake. I collected simple, everyday stories in the hope of finding, syntactic structures that reoccur in everyday speech or conversation. I moved on to discourse elicitation after $I$ discovered style particularities in narration that do not occur in daily speech.

The second part' of my research consisted of compiling the essential material for the analysis of question-answer patterns. According to formal criteria, there are six WH morphemes (in the literature often referred to as question words) in Mohawk. Each one of the six'were systematically placed into different grammátical constructions until the syntactic scope for each morpheme had been established. 6

The answers that $I$ complied seemed to be unusually long and rather formal and artificial since they were isolated from linguistic and extralinguistic context; examples are: absence of ellipsis in the answer (syntax), and intonation patterns that were different from informal speech. Patterge, once' discovered, had then to be verified in natural conversation. room settings in St. Regis, the only reserve in Québec where Mohawk is still spoken by some children.
(i) Everyday conversations: The following is a list of recorded and analysed Kanesatake conversations, ranging in style between semi-informal (a-d), and casual speech (e,f):
(a) consultant with her son '(15 years)". (15 minutes)
(b) consultant with fortume teller (80 years) (90 minutes)
(c) consultant with chief's son (12 years)
$\|^{1}$ and her son ( 15 years) ( 40 minutes)
(d) two couples during a visit
(90 minutes)
(e) family dinner conversations
(parents and three children : ')
between $2 \frac{1}{2}$ and 7 years)
(90 minutes)
(f) social conversation after dinner
among five adults. $\quad$ ( 15 minutes)

In the above data, language use ranges from high-valued speech (e.g. (5.58)) to low-valued speech (e.g. (6.48)). The rating was done by different consultants. It would appear that there is a general knowledge shared across the conmunity about what is considered to be the norm in speaking. Notice that this knowledge is in absence of (and, therefore, independent of) a written code which often imposes itex morm on speaking.

Consultants have suggested correction of some of the 'badly'. phrased utterances. I have left them untouched (and unated)--the way they occurred within the conversation. An amazing phenomenon of verbal interaction is the fact that all different kinds of Iinguistic offences . occasionally committed do not necessarily render communication ambiguous. Context and intuition of the addressee make up for this.
(11) Classroom conversations: Classroom conversations were recorded (120 minutes) at two St.' Regis elementary chools during Mohawk classes, where the teacher as well as the.students were fluent in Mohawk. ${ }^{7}$ Mohawk is usually taught as a second language to mixed student groups of speakers and non-speakers. Three groups of Mohawk-speaking students (bilingual) were especially set up for first language teaching lessons. They were recorded as follows:
(a) grade - $2 / 3$
(three 30-minute lessons)
(b) grade 4
(one 15-minute lesson)
(c) grade 5/6
(one 15-minute lesson)
1.2.3.4 Data Analysis. My analysis is based on the data of question-answer pairs compiled in conversation (performance) rather than on data complled during formal elicitation; reasons are stated above in 1.2.3.2. The malytic procedures employed are quite standard substitution methods but the difference here is that the conceptualization of the question-answer system is primarily seen as cultural rather than formal.
1.3 A Brief History of Kanesatake (Oka). 8 In the first half of the seventeenth century, Kanesatake was settled by three groups of different linguistic affiliations: the Mohawks, the Algonquins, and the Nipissings. These groups were moved originally from Mont Royal and settled by the Messieurs de St. Sulpice, under the auspices of the French Crown, in Kanesatake 25 miles west of Montreal in 1721. The Messieurs de St. Sulpice took liberties with the land appolited for the Indians' uses; they sold large portions to non-Indians. The mafority Indian group was, and still is, composed of Mohawk speakers. In the late nineteenth century, some of their families migrated to Gibson, Ontario because of conflicts with the Sulpicians; later, some of the Aitgonquins migrated to Maniwaki, Québec. Today, the two minority groups--the Algonquins and the Nipissingshave been assimilated linguistically by the dominant Mohawks through intermarriage.
1.4 Basic Mohawk Grammar. . It is not our intention to restate all the work done on Mohawk Grammar. ${ }^{9}$ Only a brief outline will now be given to initiate the reader.
1.4.1 Word Order. Mohawk is an SVO language ${ }^{10}$ shown by the natural word order in (1.1) and (1.2).

| S | $V$ | 0 |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| erhar walokári?, takó: |  |  |
| dog it-bit-it cat |  |  |
| The dog bit a cat. |  |  |


| $S$ | $C$ | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| takó:s | wa?oká:ri? | érhar |
| cat | it-bit-it | dog |
|  |  |  |

Inceonversations, the word order varies greatly. The agent (S) and the patient ( 0 ) are indicated more often by the pronominal prefixes of the verb than by the word order itself.
$\pi$


(1.4) rinf:we?s swain $\quad$| I-like-him George |  |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | I like George. |

| S | $V$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| swasún | rakinú:we?s |
| George | he-Iikes-me |
| George | likes me. |

The pronominal prefix ri- in the predicate rinu:we?s indicates that the subject is the first person singular ( $n$ ) $1: ? 1$ in (1.3), and the object, the third person masculine singular swasfn in (1.3) and (1.4). In (1.5), sasin takes on the role of the subject as indicated by the pronominal prefix rok-, meaning he-(to)-me.

[^0]1.4.2 Morphology. The verb in Mohawk is the main source of information. Each verb contains pronominal prefixes that refer to the agent and/or patient. Other markers are the tense, aspect, mode, and case. Locacion, repetition, negation, and number further modify the predication. The varb is evidently a very complex construceion. It contains four possible classes of morphological components that occur in the following positional order:
(1) prepronominal prefixes (optional): negation, partitive prefix, location, etc.
(1i) pronominal prefixes (obligatory): subjective, objective, transitive
(iii) verb stem (obligatory): reflexive, incorporated noun root (patient), verb roote
(iv) verb suffires (optional): case, aspect, attributives.

In (1.6), we shall illustrate a verb with an incorporated noum.
(1.6) Wa?kateranayúhne?


I am going to church.

I am not glossing the verb fully, since such information would not aid the reader. I an noting only the subject, object and transitive prefixes ${ }^{11}$ and, where relevant certain prepronominal prefixes.
? stands for a glottal stop / ?/, v for a nasal/ $/ /$, and $\underline{u}$ for a nasal / u /. See 1.4.3.

The verb is one of the three lexical types that comprise the Mohavk morphology. The two others are the noun and the particle. Nouns are simpler in their internal structure than verbs. They consist of a noun-stem, a pronominal prefix that refers to its designated person or object, and a nominal suffix. The suffixed moxphemes specify the location, the number, the condition, exc. The noun morphemes are ordered as follows:
(i) pronominal prefix: refers to object or person designated, and the number (does not appear on same nouns)
(ii) noun stem: single or compound noun root or nominalized verb
(iii) noadaal suffix: noun sufflx, augmentative, dinfautive, locative, number, decesadva, etc. (doas not appear on some nouns)

The noun construction is illustrated in (1.7) and (1.8):
(1.7) kaná: ta

| ka | + nat | $+a$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| neuter | + 'village' | + noum |  |
| pronominal <br> prefle |  | guffix |  |
| village |  |  |  |

(1.8) akenaktáa:ke
$\begin{array}{llll}\text { ake } & + \text { nekt } & +a & + \text { ke } \\ \text { possessive }+ \text { 'bed' } & + \text { epenthetic } & + \text { locative }\end{array}$ pronominal prefix
on my bed

The ofmplest and most restricted morphological type is that of the particle. Its internal structure is simple and in most cases unanalyzable. Particles occur alone, as compounds, or as phrases. Their
semantic and syntactic significance. is yet relatively unknown. We know that within the discourse, they act as utterance referents, connectors and modifiers. Within the utterance, they indicate relationships between the verb and the noun. Spatial and temporal, as well as other information can be obtained in this manner.

Often, my consultants searched in vain for translation equiva-

- lents in English or for meaning differences between particles. Translation equivalents do not always exdst. However, in some cases, they would be capable of explaining the function of the particles in question: for example, their modification of a verb or a noun concerned. We suggest preliminarily, that there are at least two types of particles: (1) particles that modify, at the phrase level, efther the noun or the verb; (i1) particles that act, beyond the phrase level, as utterance modifiers, connectors, coordinators, subordinators and thematizers. The use of the term 'utterance' as against the texm 'sentence' is explained in 1.4.2.
(1) The verbial particle sotsi modifies the verb in (1.9).
(1.9) - sótsi rahnekihrha
too-much he-drinks-1iquid
He drinks too much.
읍
- ne is a nominal particle (NOM) that indicatea the definiteness of the modifled noun:
to nithó:yu ne satshé:nv
how PRT-he-18-old NOM your-animal
How old is your animal?
$\therefore$
(11) The particle kv indicates a yes-no interrogative in the surface structure and thus acts as an utterance modifier:
(1.11)
kf: tho $\frac{k v}{}$ vséhseke?
here Q you-will-walk-about-again
Are you going to stay here?

The kati functions as a discourse connector, relating the preceding utterance event with that of the following one:


### 1.4.3 Simple and Complex Utterances. The term 'utte-

 rance' applies to units within the discourse, just as the term 'sentence'[^1]applies to units within a traditional gràmmar. We shall refrain, as much as possible, from using the term 'sentence' since, in linguistic literature, it generally refers to isolated units outside of the discourse context.

Sequences within the discourse often seem to be fragmentary and unacceptable if isolated. Yet, within the discourse context, they are meaningful units. For example, an ifterance sequence containing a noun only, becomes acceptable within its respective discourse context where it is part of the predication process. We, therefore, shall use the term 'utterance' whenever reference is made to a meaningful discourse sequence.

A minimal utterance, conversation-initial, is composed of a verb: (1.13)

> rinú:we ?s
> I-like-him
> I like him.

As we have mentioned previously, the verb contains pronominal references to its arguments, the subject and the object. The subject can be restated (cf. (1.4)) and also the object (cf. (1.3)), or both together (cf. (1.1)). A minimal utterance, non-conversation-initial, can be composed of a noun, for instance, that takes on different syntactic functions. In the following example, the answer is composed of a locative:

```
(1.14) Q. ka? nú Ihsehre? akenv?tyá:ka?
which PRT-place you-want-it I-should-cut-pine-tree
Where do you want me to cut the pine tree?
```

A. onv?tó:ku
at-pines
At the pines.

The answer is an ellipsis. The old information, stated by the questioner, is not restated overtly in (1.14 A) since the locative only is looked for. We suggest that the answer in (1.14) contains an underlying structure locative-verb-object, of which the locative only is expressed overtly as an appropriate discourse sequence. In certain contexts, this answer could be further reduced to:
(1.15) tho (plus gesture)
there
There.
or expanded to the following embedded utterance:

| thi ohna:ky tsi yakwahyththa? | nu |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| there 'In-the-back', where we-cause-fruit-to-fall | PRT-place |
| There behind the apple orchard |  |

kv? niwá?a kárhayv? ki?
so PRT-it-is-small forest-is-lying precise
in the small wood,
nu vhsenv?tyá:ke
PRT-place you-will-cut-tree
that is where you will cut a tree.

Notice how Mohawk expresses the equivalent of the English locative phrase 'beh'ind the apple orchard' by a sentential locative. This latter contains an embedded relative clause that is introduced by the particle tsi. Notice also how the independent Mohawk clause kv? niwa?a karháyv? '(in) the small wood' in (1.16) is a dependent noun phxase in English. The embedded Mohawk uttexances are not always marked overtly for their dependency. Intonation, content, and ordering of the clauses often indicate subordination More work has yet to be done in this area. In this study, we shall only occasionally refer to all the above. Research findings on intonation are not sufficiently advanced presently to merit their systematic inclusion.

### 1.4.4 Phonology.

In Mohawk, the consonant phonemes are: $t, k, ?, t s, s, h, n, r, y$, and $w .{ }^{12}$ The vowel phonemes comprise. oral vowels: $1, e, a, 0 ;$ and nasal vowels: $\tilde{u}$ and $\tilde{\lambda}$. In addition, there are phonemic features such as length, high tone and falling tone. Stress generally ia penultimate. Its varlants are ultimate or antepenultimate. The transcription used in this study is based on the above phonemic aymbols with the exceptions of $? \tilde{u}, \tilde{X}$, and" which are transcribed respectively as $2, u, v$, and "; ${ }^{13}$ length is marked with a colon :.

### 1.5 Outiine. The present study begins in Chapter Two

 with a theoretical discussion of issues at hand in dealing with questions.In Chapter Three, the surface structure of questions will be analysed under two separate headings: the disjunctive (yes-no) and the WH interrogatives. A description of WH morphemes and their uses is followed by a syntactic description of disjunctive, questions.

In Chapter Four, ve deal with questions and answers within an enlarged descriptive framework--that of the discourse. Although a generative semantic approach is advocated, we depart from it significantly, in order to account for the utterance within the discourse. Issues introduced and treated within the, discourse are the performative hypersentence, discourse deixes, presuppositions, and focus.

In Chapter Five, questions are classified into marked or unmarked question types-according to their modalities--from within a discourseoriented approach.

In Chapter Six, we take up the problem of how answers relate to questions. From within a presuppositional viewpoint, we suggest a preliminary characterization of answer patterns observed in Mohawk conversation.

Chapter Seven is an attempt to correlate linguistic aspects of questions to socio-culcural features. The study thus ends with a socioIInguistic description of functions observed within everyday question-answer usage and classroom question-answer interaction. The eighth Chapter contains a critical asoessment of this study's achievements and implications.

## FOOTNOTES TO CHAPTER ONE

1. The basic source is Floyd G. Lounsbury's Oneida Vérb Morphology (1953), (for full reference see Bibliography). Other texts (a number of them by Lounsbury's students) are Wallace Chafe's Seneca Morphology and Dictionary (1967: Smithsonian Contributions to Anthropology, Vol. 4. Washlngton, D.C.: The Smithsonian Press); Wallace Chafe's A Seman'tically Based Sketch of Onondaga (1970: International Journal of American Linguistics 36:2(II)); Paul Postal's Some Syntactic Rules in Mohawk (1962) in Bibliography; Mohawk Morphology (1972) by John Beatty, in Bibllography; A Grammar of Akwesasne Mohawk (1972) by Nancy Bonvillain, in Bibliography; Marianne Williams' A Grammar of Tuscarora (1974) in Bibliography; A Mohawk-English Dictionary (1971) by Nancy Bonvillain. and Beatrice Francls, in Bibllography; A Thousand Words of Mohawk (1973): by Gunther Michelson, in Bibliography; Clifford Abbott's An Oneida Dictionary ( 1974 preliminary version), unpublished $\mathrm{MS}^{7}$; and Michael K . Foster's From the Earth to Beyond the Sky: An Ethographic Approach to Four Longhouse Iraguois Speech Events (1974: Ottawa: National Museum of Man).
2. Questions and answers have been atudied together because (i) they are sequential units whthin the discourse, and (ii) the differences between questions and their usages can only be analyzed when recourse is taken to their respective answers."
3. For example, within the discourse, presuppositions were used, in the sense of performative preconditions, on the one hand (Chapter Four), whereas on the other hand, these preconditions were dealt with as an intrinsic part of the performative reading (Chapter five).
4. Most of these schools consisted only of Indian children. They were located on Indian Reserves and administrated by the Department of Indian Affairs of Canada. The other schools had a mixed population of Indian and white children. These schools were always located outside of the reserve and the Indian pupils formed a minority of the school comunity. Their programs were administered by the Provincial Governments of Quebec and Ontario.
5. Since we have written this text, some' lower grades up in James Bay: are now being taught mostly in Cree.

The Quebec Provincial Government's Rapport .... (1970), p. 80, states the languages spoken in Kanesatake as: Mohawk 100\%, English 75\%, and French 25\%. Note the discrepancy between this and the information from
the Indian Affairs and Northern Development Department given on page 306 of Appendix $I$, History of Kanesatake.
6. Based on the lists of questions and responses which occurred in the recorded conversations, a series of further procedures were used to isolage units of the question-answer system, and to amplify substitutionresponse classes. The morphologically isolable forms which have occurred in the lists of questions were placed by the analyst in different syntactic contexts. The consultant then was asked which of these may occur. In this manner, the syntaiftc limits of each WH morphama sera determined.
7. I owe gratitude to the principals and particularly to the Mohawk language teachers for their graciousness in permitting ma to observe and racord Mohawk-apeaking tudenta.
8. For a more thorough historical background to the Mohawks in Kane-satake, see Appendix $I$, History of Kanesatike, at the and of this thesis.
9. Recent papers on Mohowk to be consulted in the Bibliography are found under the following names: Beatty, Bonvillain, and Mifhelson. ".
10. Por a more involved discussion on this subject, in respect to Tuscayora (a Northert Iroquoian language), see Mariame Wililams (1974a and b).
N. The transitive prefixes are fused pronouns that mark the co-occurrence of the agent and the patient within the pradiention. These pronours are difficult to analyze; yet, where poasible, the general ordering seems to be tha uhject first and then the object.
12. There are also two peripheral consonant phoneman $p$ and m, which. are of foreign origin.
13. In accordance with the Mohawk orthography which is actually used, we shall mark the stressed vowel without differentiating the high from the falling tone. There are relatively few minimal pairs contrasting the two tones.

## CHAPTER TWO

THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK OF QUESTION-ANSWER FORMATIONS
2.1 Introduction. Question-answer pairs refer toutterance types and their sequences occurring within conversation, which is part of the discourse. We, therefore, have to select a theoretical framework that is broad enough to take into account aspects of language on the one hand, and language as an integrated part of discourse on the other. Such an attempt has been made by Fillmore (1973) who postulates a set of principles that pertain to these two dimensions.
2.2 Fillmore's Theoretical Framework. His set of principles can be condensed as follows (Fillmore (1973: 113-114)):
(1) Linguistic description for each lexical item in the language:
a) the grammatical context in which it might occur,
b) the grammatical processes to which it is subject
(transformation and restriction rules), "
c) speech act conditions, conversation rules and semantic interpretation associated with the item.
(1i). Gramatical description for each sentence:
a) the 'deep structure' underlying each. sentence,
b) the grammatical processes by which'deep stricture' representations are transformed into surface sentences.
(i11) Principles for derivflng the semmetc and pragmatic description of a sentence in its possible uses.
(iv) A theory of communication acts (speech acts) that empowers principle (iii) to acEount for discourse rules.
(v) A theory of discourse which describes sentences within conversational contexts.
(vi) A theory of natural logic by which conditions of success or appropriateness of speech acts within a conversation cam be deduced.

An enormous amount of further research is necessary in order to refine and elaborate the above-mentioned areas into a comprehensive theory of language.

### 2.3 Theoretical Framework of Question-Answer Formations.

The present study is an attempt to explore further the areas of discourse that pertain particularly to questions and their answers in Mohawk. Fillmore shall be used as an initial guideline.

Very little is known about the grammatical structures of Mohawk. What is known is mostly morphological in nature; this shald serve as our point of departure. ${ }^{2}$ We shall ignore the morphological segmentation of the utterances under analysis, with the exception of those features that signal or relate to question-answer formations on the surface level.

Principle (1). In any language, questions are slgnalled by overt surface features such as intonation, question particles, and/or question words. According to Fillmore's outline, principle (i),
we, shall comence our investigation with a distributional survey of the question particle and WH morphemes (in 3.1, 3.2, and 3.2.1-5), their semantic interpretation, and speech act conditions to which they are subject (in 3.3.6).

We thus shall discuss the question particle and the WH morpheme, each one within its respective gramatical context. Grammatical processes are discussed within.the domain of syntax (principle (i1)). ${ }^{3}$

Principle (i1). Addressing ourselves to principle (ii), we shall now discuss different theoretical approaches on the grammatical nature of questions.

Within the generative approach, different linguists have advanced different hypotheses about the gramatical natire of interrogative sentences. Chomsky (19ㄱㄱ) postulated that interrogative sentences, were derived from declarative ones ${ }^{4}$ by the application of question-formation transformations. These transformations were optional and did not preserve méaning. Katz \& Postal (1964) recovered meaning by positing two deep structure elements in direct questions: the question morpheme ' $Q$ ' with a 'performative reading" ${ }^{5}$ that identifies semantically an interrogative sentence ${ }^{6}$ and the WH morpheme that identifies the questioned constituent. This underIying WH morpheme, Katz \& Postal proposed for both the yes-no questions and the WH questions; In the yes-no questions, the WH morpheme was attached to the sentence adverb 'either/or' (questioned constituent). The yes-no questions were thus treated as special cases of disjunctive questions--
$S$ (affirmed) or $\bar{S}$ (negated) --a transformationally reduced version of two disfoined sentences. (Ever since, linguists such as Langacker, and Stockwell, Schachter \& Partee (1973) have conceived the yes-no questions as derived from underlying disjunctive constructs.)

Baker (1970) and Bresnan (1970) posit a segmental Q without a performative reading. Baker's $Q$ is an operator in direct and indirect questions that indexes each questioned constituent. In clause-initial question position, Baker's revised $Q$ is lexicalized as 'whether/if'. WH is introduced transformationally. Schachter (1968) alao criticizes Katz \& Postal's use of $Q$ as a trigger. He suggests that this function could equally well be executed by the node:

CONJ
[ + OR ]
[ + WH ]

He differentiates yes-no questions from WH questions on semantic grounds. The yes-no questions are derived by him from disjunctive (alternative) questions. These disjunctive questions act as true paraphrases of yes-no questions, since their second disjunct is a negation of the first one.

Bresnan (1970) proposes also a segmental $Q$, conceptualized as complementizer alternating with 'that' and 'for'. She derives 'whether' from $Q+$ 'either' but does not specify the other properties of $Q$.

Kuno \& Robinson (1972) argue against indexing as proposed by Baker. If a $Q$ has several possible readings, then the different readings should be accounted for in terms of conventions that determine appropriate
question-answer pairs and not in terms of structural indexing. 'They suggest a principle of control proposed by Langacker (1969) that would make indexing redundant. ${ }^{7}$

Langacker (1969, 1970) follows and updates Katz \& Postal (1964), Rosa (1967), and Stockwell, Schachter \& Hall (1968) by treating yes-no quastions as derivations from on underlying disjunctive construct. WH is incorporaced into the disjunctive construct and symbolized as $\mathrm{WH}+\mathrm{OR}$, an ad-hoc abbreviation fox Racz \& Postal's ${ }^{\circ}$ WH + either/or ${ }^{\prime \prime}$ conjunction (cf. Langackar, 1974, p. 22). Tho transformation rules then apply in the yes-no quostion formation: the delection of the conjunct and the 'Or Not' deletion.

In conclusion, Katz \& Postal attemped to show that yes-no questions are spectal cases of WH queationo. Langacker (1969) also treats both question types as reflecting one underlying structure. Hoizever, contrary to Katz \& Poseal, he concelves Wit questions as special cases of disjunctive ones.

In this study, we are not going to follow through on all these arguments. We refer the interested reader co previous references. We made allusion to the above authors for several reasons: firstly, to point out that there has not been found yet a gramatical description of question formations that is adequate and thus of universal nature; secondly, to serve as a theorctical background to the approach that we are going to suggest in this paper.

We shall opt with Langacker (1974) against a segmental Q analysis, and yet for a perfomacive clause analyeis along with Rose (1970), Schreiber (1972), and sodock (1975). Dur study shall doal with questions as intrinsic
members of question-answer pairs within the discourse. We thus subscribe to Kuno \& Robinson's observation (1972) that questions are subject to discourse conventions and, therefore, cannot be analyzed appropriately by a syntax-oriented grammar. Although we shall start with a description of surface markers within the question-answer pairs, we shall then insert them within a broader framework--that of the discourse.

Principles (iii) to (vi). According to Fillmore's principles (iii) to (vi), we intend to show in Chapter Four the manner in which the morphological and syntactic aspects of questions can be integrated into the discourse. We have previously suggested that each question has a performative reading. We now suggest that each answer also has a performative reading. This implies that questions and answers can and, therefore, should be analyzed sementically. The theoretical framework of the linguistic study will be that of generative semantics as postulated, for example, by McCaw1ey, and Lakoff, and applied as well as expanded by Chang, Williams, and Woodbury. The latter two have used generative semantics for Iroquoian languages. This approach hopefully will permit the statement of some inte-, resting generalizations about Mohawk questions and answers.

The theory has as a basis the following set of principles which underlie this study:
(1) Syntactic and semantic representations are of the same formal nature.
(ii) A single system of rules acts as the generative source of the grammar, relating the semantic representation through consecutive' stages to the surface structure. Non-terminal node labels in semantic representations are $S$, NP, and $V$, corresponding respectively to proposition, argument, and predicate.

Although theoretically we have chosen generative semantics, we shall depart considerably from this theory. Our grammar is discourseoriented, whereas generative semantics is usually sentence-oriented. A discourse frame with a performative reading (Ross, 1970), speaker index, time inder, and place index shall be introduced. According to us, focus and presuppositions are also originated and, therefore, introduced in the structure of the discourse.

The term 'discourse' we shall characterize in formal terms as proposed by Chang (1972):
... discourse $D$ generates a set of utterances, $U_{1}, U_{2}, \ldots, U_{n}$ such that $U$ is semantically cohesive With $U_{f}$, where $U_{i}$ is immediately preceded by $U_{f}$ in $D$. ... 'Semantic cohesiveness' ... must include, among others, temporal, causal, implicational, and similar relations between $U_{1}$ and $U_{j}$.

In the discourse, utterances, rather than sentences, ${ }^{8}$ are generated. Sentences as linguistically-perceived units of analysis will be 'contextualized utterances'. The term 'contexr' is used in two ways: linguistically and extralinguistically. The linguistic context of $U_{i}$ is (according to Chang) co-terminous with the domains of the discourse D. The extralinguistic context covers such factors as social setitings and
cultural conventiotis shared by the participants, functions, etc. Further detailed presentation and discussion of the discourse will follow in Chapter Four. Though its' elaboration in that chapter will be mainly in linguistic terms, the discourse shall be restated and discussed more fully in sociolinguistic terms in Chapter Seven.

In conclusion, Fillmore's outline shall no longer be referred to. However, his six principles can be traced throughout the thesis. For example, principle (1ii) is illustrated in Chapter Four and beyond; prínciple (iv) mainly in Chapters Four and Five; principle (v) in Chapter Seven; and princtple (vi) in Chapters Four and Six. Although the limited scope of our research does not permit us to develop Fillmore's proposal, our findings confirm the validity of such a guideline.

## FOOTNOTES TO CHAPTER TNO

1. Considering that our approach is that of generative semantics, we shall refer to 'semantic representations' rather than to 'deep structure' in Chapter Four and on. In Chapter Three, though, reference is ${ }^{\circ}$ made to 'deep structure'.
2. See Beatty, Bonviliain, and Michelson on Mohawk morphology, and Lounsbury on Oneida, a closely related Iroqualan language.
3. We are fully aware that we are ignoring the psychological/philosophical aspects of questions and answers that were recognized, yet not dealt with, for example, by Bolinger (1957). These aspects appear in the writings of philosophers and logicians (see Aqvist (1965), and Belnap (1969)). However, they have been carefully avoided by linguists within the transformational traditions.
4. He made a clear distinction between yes-no and WH questions.
5. ' ...' I request that you answer ... ' (1964); p. 89.
6. $Q$ in addition triggers certain transformation rules such as intonation for yes-no questions, subject-auxiliary inversion, and deletfon of sentence-initial 'whether' (which is derived from WH + 'either') and WH-mpvement.
7. According to Langacker (1974), the generalized principle of control can be stated roughly as follows:
"If two identical nodes $A^{1}$ and $A^{2}$ both command some other node $B$, and $A^{1}$ commands $A^{2}$ asymuntrically (i.e. $A^{1}$ commands $A^{2}$ but $A^{2}$ does not command $A^{1}$ ), then any transformational or semantic scope relation between $A$ and $B$ can hold only between $A^{2}$ and $B$, never between $A^{I}$ and B."
(p. 7)

Langacker further specifies:
"The principle of control predicts that a question word will always be in the scope of the most immediately commanding interrogative predicate; hence who in 'Who remanbers where we bought which book?' 'will be in the scope of $V$, the performative predicate, while both where and which will be in the scope of the interrogative predicate remembers. Because the scope relations follow automatically from a general principle, indexing would be superfiuous; it is only necessary to indicate which indefinite elements are being questioned, and WH is the obvious choice for the marker." (ibid.)
8. See statement on the use of the term 'utterance' in 1.4.3.

CHAPTER THREE
MOHAWK INTERROGATIVES

### 3.1 Introduction: Interrogative Surface-Features.

Mohawk interrogative sentences differ from declarative sentences by having (i) the question particle in second position; or (ii) a WH morpheme in initial position. The declarative counterpart of questions (3.2) - (3.4) is shown in (3.1).
(3.1) yakoyó?te?

- she-works

She is working.
(i) The question particle kv in second position, (3.2).
(3.2) yalcoyó?te? kv
she-works $Q$
Is she working?

The question particle occurs also in second position within the first and within the second disjunct of a disjunctive question, (3.3).

$$
\begin{array}{llllll}
\text { yakoyó?te? kv kátu kv yah teyakoyó?te? }  \tag{3.3}\\
\text { she-works } & Q & \text { or } Q & \text { not she-works }
\end{array}
$$

Is she working or 1sn't she working?

Notice chat two elements occur within a disjunctive question: katu 'or', and kv 'question particle'. In the yes-no question (3.2), kv 'question particle' occurs which may or may not be deleted. Morphologically, the question particle as an unanalyzable entity is of no
interest whatsoever. Its primary function is that of a syntactic question marker. We, therefore, shall examine it more thoroughly, within the context of ayntar in 3.4.
(ii) WI morpheme in first position.
(3.4) ká?tke vyakoyó?te?
when shownill-work


When is she golng to work?

Further, both the question particle and the WI morpheme also occur in their respective second and first positiono within embedded sentences. This is exemplified by fndirect quastions, as in (3.5) and (3.6), and by quoted questions, as in (3.7) and (3.8).
(3.5) yah cevokatezŷ:tare tóka kv ayakoyó?te? tơka
not I-lenow-is maybe DUB she-would-work maybe,
I don't lanow whether she is working
yah tayaloyó? te?
not she-would-worte
or not.
(3.6) yah tewakateryv́tare káthe vyakoyó?te?
not I-know-it when she-will-work
I don't know when she is going to work.
(3.7) wahari?wanutu vyórhy?ne kv veayó?te?
he-asked tomorrow $Q$ you-will-work
He asked: 'Aze you working tomorrow?'.

```
(3.8)
Waharl? vanútu ká?tlce vyakoyô?te?
he-asked when she-imll-work
He asked: 'When is she going to work?'.
is)
```

Finally, Mohask interrogativa ocntoncong in parcicular the ye no questions, diffor from declarative sentences by their intonation pattern. Yes-no questions can be distinguished from thelr corresponding declarative uttcrances solely by meano of the queotion intonation. This phonoconon secmo to be very common among languages. In'English, for instance, yes-no quationa are maxbed by a torminal riaing contour. thoreas In Kanesatabo Mohamb; the yes-no quostiona are diatinctivaly marked by a indtial riatng pitch on the flrst otrossod syllable in the uttexance. This rising pitch at the beginning of the question is higher than in declarative gentencos. The deciarative ocntcace usunlly atarten when a rioling concour and ends vith a falling onc, If tho quootion contoux is absent, the interrogative particle or the discourse conters will aignal a yes-no question.

In converactions, the incerrogative aentence io perceived as a question thet esko for on anoner. In this chapter, we shall focus on the features of tho question alone: (1) e quich clesolfidatory ourvey (in 3.2) shall be followed by (11) a more detalled description of the question features (in 3.3) including:
(a) their segmental composition (morphological features); and
(b) their posdeional relationship to clauged, or clause constituents (oyntax).
3.2 Classification of Mohawk Questions. Based maínly on formal criteria, the questions in Mohawk can be classified into two major groups:
(i) Disjunctive questions
(ii) WH questions
3.2.1 Disfunctive Questions. Disjunctive questions are composed of two groups:
(i) ' $x$ or not- $x$ ' questions ('theme or not-theme' questions)
(ii) ' X or X ' questions (choice questions)
-

### 3.2.1.1 ' X or not-X' Questions. These question types

fall into three subgroupinge in Mohawk: the full form and reductions of it.

Full form ' X or not-X'

| (3.9) $\quad$ wáre'? kv kátu kv yah thé:re? |  |
| ---: | :--- |
| $\quad$ he-goes $Q$ or $Q$ not he-goes |  |
|  | Is he going or isn't he going? |



Reduced form ' X or not' ${ }^{\prime 2}$
(3.10) wá:re? kv kátu kv yah
he-goes $Q$ or $Q$ not
Is he going or not?

Keduced form ' X ' (yes-no question)

wh: re? kv
he-goes $Q$
Is ghe going?
3.2.1.2 ' X or X ' Questions. These choice ' X or X ' questions may have more than two conjuncts. They are distinct from the ' X or not-X' questions, insofar as the negation of the first disjunct by the second disjunct never occurs.
yakú:kweh kv kátu kv rû:kweh kátu kv woman $Q$ or $Q$ man or $Q$ Is it a woman or a man or ... ? (animal or spirit or inanimate)
' X or X ' questions and ' X or not- X ' questions can co-occur as a complex question construction.
sehsáhêatyûhe kv kátu kv yah, kátu kv kv́hv vséhseke? you-'go-home' $Q$ or $Q$ not, or $Q$ here, you-will-stay Are you going home or not, or will you stay here?

If $X_{1}$ symbolizes ' $X$ or not', question (3.13) can be formalized as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{1} \text { (' } X \text { or not') or } \quad x_{2} \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

The secfud, $X_{2}$, specifies the negative component of the first $X_{1}$. Thus, $X_{2}$ proves to be a negation of the ' $X$ ' in $X_{1}$, yet not on syntactic but on semantic grounds. $y_{g}$
' X or X ' questions are not always dealing with polar alternations; otherwise, questions that contain more than two conjuncts would not occur. Cam non-polar ' $X$ or $X$ ' question types still co-occur whth ' $X$ or not-X' questhons in one complex construction? If so, then what is the semantic function of $X_{2}$ in respect to $X_{1}$, if the latter represents an ' $X$ or not- $X$ ' sub-
question. Such queries are of semantic nature. Answers to questions will have to be taken into consideration in order to explain the semantic aspect of such constructs, (see Chapters Five and Six). This implies that questions can be adequately treated only within a discourse framework where the use of one utterance is explained by adjacent ones. We shall come back to this problem in a later section.
3.2.2 WH Questions. A11 the underlined WH forms are sentence initial surface features by which WH questions can be distinguished, not only from disjuctive questions but also from declarative statements.
(3.15) to nityako:yu
how PRT-she-1s-old
How old is she?
ka? nú:we wá:re?
which PRT-place he-goes
Where is he going?
(3.17) uhka? nî:se?
who NOM-you
Who are you?
nahó:tv? ne yutácyate
PRT-?-1s-(a)-thing NOM she-names-herself
What is her name?
(3.15) and (3.16) are adverbial WH questions, and (3.17) and (3.18) are pronominal ones.
3.2.3 Disjumctive and WH Questions. WH questions and disjunctive questions, in that order, can be conjoined into a complex question construction:
(3.19) uhka? tyakotyeráhto 1:se? kv kátu kv serik
who she-is-first you Q or Q Sarah
Who was (married) first, you or Sarah?

Disjunctive question and WH questions, in that order, may also be confoined; however, such complex construction is much less frequent than that shown above, as in (3.19). Extreme impatience on the part of the questioner is implied in this construction, as shown in (3.20).
wá: re? kv kátu kv yah thá:re? kátu kv
he-goes $Q$ or $Q$ not he-goes or $Q$
Is he going or is he not going or
nahó: tv?
PRT-?-1s-(a)-thing
what?
3.3 Identification of WH Morphemes. WH questions can
be identified in Mohawk by the following interrogatives:

| ka? | 'which'/'where' |
| :--- | :--- |
| to' | 'how' |
| oh | 'what', |
| uhka? | 'who' |
| ká? the | 'when' |

The WH morphemes are lexdcal elements that take on syntactic functions. Notions of time, manner, reason, etc., are thus questioned and requested. Some of them (see the section on ka?, to, and oh) often require qualifiers to further specify the type of information requested. We shall call these WH morpheme' + qualifier constructs 'WH phrases'. For the WH moxpheme/ phrase, pro-forms shall be postulated, of which they are reflexes.

Notice that each qualifier following the WH morpheme is marked by a partit申ve prefix ni- (na?-, nu-, n-). In the pronominal phrase oh nahó:tv? 'what', na?- refers to the indefinite object or subject in question. In the adverbial phrase oh ni:yot 'how', ni- refers to the adverb in question. Syntactically, this prefix relates the qualifier, as an immediate constituent, to its preceding WH morphene counterpart. Semantically, the partitive prefix ni- refers to the indefinite constituent in question. For example, in ka? níwe 'where', nu- refers to the indefinite place. Syntactico-semantically, dependency to the requested constituent is marked by the partitive. We shall describe the WH morphemes in detail in the section that follows.

### 3.3.1 WH Morpheme ka? and Categorical Qualifiers.

Table (I shows the interrogatives involving ka? 'which'.' Each form is describe ${ }^{\text {qi }}$ with its variants found at Kanesatake."

|  | Full Form | Variant | English Translation Equivalent |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Adverb <br> space | ka? nú:we <br> ka ? nu + we <br> which LOC PRT + ? <br> ka? nuloráa: ti <br> ka ? $\mathrm{nu} \quad+\mathrm{ko}+\mathrm{ati}$ <br> which LOC PRT + FN + be beolde | ka? nú ka ? <br> ka? nukwá | which place/where <br> which side/direction |
| time | lea? nikahá:wd <br> kal ni $+\mathrm{ka}+\mathrm{haw}$ <br> which $\mathrm{PRT}+\mathrm{FN}+$ carry |  | which time (season) <br> (date) <br> (hour) |
| Pronoun | Ka? ndká:yv? ka? $\mathrm{nd}+\mathrm{ka}+\mathrm{yv}$ ? thich $P R T+$ NN $+11 e$ |  | which one |

table i. Wh Morphene lea? and categorical qualifiers.

The wH morpheme ka? is maxked lexically as [-definite]. It is modified by categorical qualifiers, nouns, that specify its syntactic distribution ${ }^{2}$ as:
(1) an adverb: WH + some + categorical qualifier; or
(ii) a promoun: Whit that + categorical qualifier.

As an adverb, ka? locates things spatially and temporally. As a pronoun, ka? may iocate the agent or the patient. We shall now illustrate each one
of the above categories.

Adverb of Space
(3.21) Q. ka? né:ne ${ }^{3}$ sakîho
where CLIF-NOM Sakiho
Where is that Sakiho?
A. khé:re kv rasothéha yehv́tesu
'1t-must-be' DUB grand-mother he-atays-there It must be at grandmother's where he stays.

The qualifier nu:wa 'place', may be partially deleted leaving nú:, or com-. . pletely deleted, $1 \mathbb{E}$ followed by a verb. However, the qualifier nif:we is deleted if followed by a noun. In Kanesatake, speakers have been observed to use either of these following forms, signalling the same meaning:
(i) kat ni:we ni:re?s ne sakiho
which place $P R T-h o-i s ~ n o y ~ S a k i h o ~$

Where is Sakiho?
(11) ka? nui: ni:reis ne gakího
(1i1) ka? ni:reis ne sakiho
(iv) ka? ne sakîho

```
                Q. ka? nukwta shayk?tere? }\mp@subsup{}{}{4
    which PRT-it-bide he-is-in
    Which aide is he on?
```

(3.22) A. Yah ḱaneka
no 'no-where'
None, no side.

Adverb of Time
Q. ka?
nikahá:w1
náhseke?
ne
orhó:tseri
which
PRT-it-is-carrying
PRT-you-eat-it
NOM
wax-bean
In what season do you eat wax beans?
A. akvuháa:ke
in-summer
In the summer.
B

Pronoun
(3.24)
$\begin{array}{lll}\text { Q. ka? nika:yv? } & \text { Ihsehre? } \\ \text { which } & \text { PRT-it-is-1ying } & \text { you-want-it }\end{array}$
Which one do you want?
A. ne ki:kv

MOM this-one
This one here.

### 3.3.2 WH morpheme to and Categorical Qualifiers.

Table II, shows the interrogatives involving to 'how'.

|  | Full form | Variant | English Translation Equivalent |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Amount: Quantifier <br> non-count amount | ```to ni:ku to ni + k +u how PRT + FN + be amount``` | to | how much [-human] |
| count <br> amount | to ni:tsu <br> to ni i tsu <br> how PRT + 2/PL <br> to nihá:ti <br> to $\mathrm{n} 1+$ hati <br> how PRT + M/PL <br> to nikú:ti <br> to $\mathrm{ni}+$ kuti <br> how PRT + FN/FI/PL |  | ```how many [+ human] .of you [+ PL] of them [+M] of them [+ FN/FI]``` |
| Spatial <br> Quantifier <br> disțance | ```to nlyó:re ro ni + yo + re how PRT + FN + be far``` | $\cdots$ | how far |
| measure | ```to ni:wa to ni +w + a how PRT + FN + be big to ni:yvs to ni +y + vs how PRT + FN + be long``` | $\cdots$ | how wide/big <br> how long |
| weight | ```to 'niyókste to ni + yo + kgt + e how PRT + FN + be heavy + epenthetic vowel``` | $-\frac{7}{7}$ | how heavy |


|  | Full Form | Variant | English Translation Equivalent |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\frac{\text { Temporal }}{\text { Quantifier }}$ | ```to náhe?* to na? + h + e? how 'PRT + ? + be long to nikari:we?s to ni + ka + rihw + e?s how PRT + FN + matter + be long``` |  | how long <br> how long a time |
| Manner | ```to ni:yot to ni + yo'+t how PRT + FN + be like``` | to | how/in which way |

TABLE II. WH MORPHEME to AND CATEGORICAL QUALIFIERS.
to is an adverbial WH morpheme [-definite]. We might formalize
it as $\mathrm{WH}+$ some + categorical qualifier. The qualifiers specify explicitly the amount, the space, the time, and the manner.

## Amount Quantifiex

non-count amount to ni:ku/to elicits things and animals, and thus contains the feature [-human].
Q. to ni:ku
wahá: yake how PRT-it-is-amount he-eats-fruit How many fruit did he eat?

[^2](3.25) A. têkent
two
Two.

$\begin{array}{ll}\text { Q. to } n 1: k u & \text { tsi ruwahsere } \\ \text { how PRT-it-is-amount that they-pursue-him }\end{array}$
How much do they pursue him for?
A. tékeni tewv?nyáwe
two hundred
Two hundred.
(3.27) Q. to nihuwanatukwiv:nis ne sakiho
how (much) PRT-they-charge-him NOM Sakiho
How much do they charge Sakiho?
A. wisk
five
Five.
count amount to niháti/to ni:tsu/to nikúti refer to human beings. They contain the feature [thuman].
(3.28) Q. to niha:ti ne rotiskvrakéhte
how PRT-them NOM boys
How many of them are boys?
A. Erkak
one-only
On1y one.

## Spatial Quantifier

## distance

(3.29) Q. to niyó:re yvsyenikwá: tho how PRT-1t-is-far you (dual)-will-go-there How far will you go?
A. kak nú tetyatekahakwánv some PRT-place we (dual)-go-road Somewhere, we'll take a walk.
measure
(3.30)
Q. to nl:wa
thi waskbhu
how PRT-it-is-big that-one bridge
How big is that bridge?
A. waskowána
it-is-big-bridge
It is a big bridge.
weight
(3.31) Q. to ndsaya?takste
how PRT-your-body-weighs
How much do you weigh?
A. キ́ska tewv?nyáwe táhnu wisk niwâhsv one hundred and five PRT-ten One hundred and fifty.

## Temporal Quantifier

| (3.32) | Q。 | to | náhe? | yé?seskwe? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | how | PRT-? | you-stayed |
|  |  | How | long did | y there? |

A. tsi yahyá:ksera
that one-week
For one week. "
(3.33) Q. to nikari:we?s ye?seakwe?
how PRT-matter-is-long you-stayed-there

For how long a time did you atay there?
A. toi yahyá:ksera
that one-week
For one week."

## Manner

(3.34) Q. to ni:yot
how PRT-it-is-like NOM your-dress
A. orú:ya? nłwahsohkó:tv? cáhnu tekanv́?tge?s
blue PRT-it-is-(a)-kind-(of)-colour and it-has-long-arm

It is blue and has long sleeves
tâhnu áhsv n1:ku katainkó:tu ohv́tu
and three PRT-it-is-amount button in-front
and three buttons in front.

A. (The child shows her injured hand to the questioner.)
to without overt qualifier implicitly gignifies $\mathrm{WH}+$ some +
Quantity/Manner. It is usually foilowed by a verb that renders the meanIng of to mambiguous. The verb is marked morphologically by a partitive prefix, ni-.
$\Delta$
*to used as above requeats from the answerer an action. Its under--1ying meaning is: 'Let me see where you got hurt.'

### 3.3.3 WH morpheme oh + Categorical Qualifier.

Table III shows the interrogatives involving oh 'what' or 'WH'. "

(.. $\quad$ TABLE III. 'WH MORPHEME oh AND CÂTEGORICAL QUALIFIERS.
oh is marked [-definite, -human] and is derived semantically from WH + some + thing. Unlike to and ka?, oh is always followed by a qualifier; oh cannot occur alone. However, an oh question can be properly understood even if its WH morpheme is omitted.

## Pronoun

Q. nahótv?
PRT-?-1s-(a)-thing PRI-she-name
"What is the name of the one"
sheyotiv: se?
you-work
you work for?
A. né kv payk
NOM DUB Pike
It is ... Pike.

The very commonly used question phrase oh nahb: tv? 'what'/'what kind of thing' is used in Kanesatake Mohswk exclusively in its shorteneq form nahó:tv?. This suggests to us that the lexical meaning of oh has been lost ${ }^{6}$ in everyday usage, although its syntactic function as a WH marker has been retained.

The qualifier nahó:tv? is a partially unanalyzable construction:
 -ohtv- that is adjectival. in nature. Incorporation fis absent. When used as a question, the requestad element is exactly the noun that would be in-
corporate if co-occurring. Nom incorporation is thus obligatory for this adjectival qualifier. We shall not go further into the very complex question of now n incorporation. 7
(3.37)
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { Q. oh nvisatyere? not :nv } & \text { vséhsewe? } \\ \text { WH PRT-you-wili-do NOM-' the time when' you-will-come-back }\end{array}$
What will you do when you come back?
A. tvekatskáhu?

Itwill-eat-it
I will have something to eat.
noun incorporation
(3.38) Q. nalcanuhsó: tv?

PRT-it-is-(a)-kind-(of)-house
What kind of house is it?
A. keanuhsaséhs test

1t-is-new-house
*
It is a new house.

Adverb of Manner The usage of oh, seems to be unanimously agreed upon
in the two following types of constructions:
Q. oh ni:yot 伿e sainistíha

WH PRT-it-is-like NOM your-mother
How is your mother?
A. skenv?kó:wa
peace-1s-great
Very fine.
(3.40)
Q. oh niyotuhátye
How is your mother?
A. yakotalkari:te
she-is-fine
She is fine.
ne sa?nistúv:ha
WH PRT-she-'gets-along'
NOM your-mother

Adverb of Rason
(3.41)

| Q. oh nutyé:rv | tsi niyb:re, |
| :--- | :--- |
| WH PRT-it-is-(a)-matter that PRT-it-is-far |  |
| Why is it that |  |

( sahutya?tará:ko - nótyarke
they-'got-themselves-out' some-others so many of, the others left?
A. neki tsi yahú:ka tetyó?the wahi yakwatya?taró:roke because that 'noboafy' they-come TAG we-gather-ourselvestogether
oh nutyé:rv is the most frequent variant used in Kanesatake for 'why'. This question is asking for a reason in the answer. The answer is of ten a 'because' type of answer but not exciusively. We shall talk more about this aspect in Chapter Six that will treat the answers tg questions. We might add that 'why' questions are also introduced by yah kv 'no, eh?'.

### 3.3.4 WH morpheme úhka?. úhka?' 'who'/'whose'/'whom'

 is marked [-definite, thuman]. We derive úhká? semantically from $\mathrm{WH}+$ some + one. The pro-form is marked by mutually exclusive features listed below:$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { WH }+ \text { some }+ \text { one } \\
&\left\{\begin{array}{l}
{[+ \text { agent }]} \\
{[+ \text { owner }]} \\
{[+ \text { beneficiary }]}
\end{array}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

It cannot be reduced; and it never occurs with a qualifier.

## [+ agent]

(3.42) Q. uhka? vyekwatá:ko who fixes-it Who fizes it?
A. rake?niha
father

[+ owner]
(3.43) Q. úhka? yesaýr?a tsi nîhshétkv who they-child that PRT-you-are-ugly Whose child are you that you are so ugly?

This question is often jokingly addressed to a dog.

## [+ beneficiary]

(3.44) Q. uhka? thi

who yahatewnáta?ase Whom is he calling?
A. ratétzv?ts yahuwatewvnáta?ase
doctor they-'phone'-himsup'
They call up the doctor.
3.3.5 Questiòn word ká?tke. ' ká?tke 'when' is marked [-definitive]. It signifies WH + some + time. He suggest that this adverbial question word is derived from a paretally unanalyzable compound ka? $\stackrel{\star}{*}$ 'which' + unanalyzable morpheme 'time'. Mohawk speakers today intuitively conceive of it as only one morpheme. It always occurs in this unabbreviatable form in questions that ask for a temporal specification.
Q. ká?tke ihsehre? akena?tyáa:ka?
when you-want I-should-cut-pine-tree
When do you want me to cut the pine tree?
A. yotohétstu nátye
it-has-past NOM-south
In the afternoon.
$:$
$\delta$

### 3.3.6 Interrelationship between WH Morphemes. In the

 preceding section, we have dealt with the question markers in groups that were morphologically determined. In this section, we shall ignore themorphological considerations, and differentiate the WH morphemes mainly, in terms of their substitutability in identical contexts. The observations that follow are brief and suggestive, and arranged around English translations.
3.3.6.1 Which. ka? 'which' applies to nominals that are agentive/patient or adverbial pro-forms.
(1) which: the agentive/patient pro-form ka? 'agentive'/'patient' always has to be followed by a qualifying noun nika:yv? 'which one', that specifies the referent and sets it apart from the adverbials. 'Which one' alternates with the less specific pro-form "who'. The latter is always teanslated by uhka?, unless there is a context in which choices are specified. This observacton malces us conclude two things:
(a) a conversation may not be opened with ka? nikáyv? 'which one';
(b) It seems to be only used if there are alternatives or if the alternatives have been explicitly stated or specified by the linguistic and/or extralinguistic context, as in the following example.

The father looks at the bread basket; the boys have finished eating. He asks his wife:
 Which one of them (boys) ate
$\qquad$ 0
thí:kv kaná:taru that-one bread all the bread?
ka? nik'a:yv? io replaced by the personal pronoun uhka? 'who' if no alternatives are specificd, and if it is a conversation-initial sentence. The following question was asked to a stranger knocking at the door:
(3.47) Q. uhka? ní:se?
who NOM-you
Tho are you?
ka? niká:yv 'imperconal pronoun' is replaced by oh nahó:tv? in contexts not specified.
(3.48) Q. ka? nikâ:yv? tes atuhutsó:ni which PRT-it-is-lying you-went-it Which one do you want?
Q. oh nikatisiketo:nv? testuhutsó:ni
wil PRT-it-is-(a)-kind-(of)-candy you-want-it Which candy do you want?

The alternatives con be partially apecified wichin a ka? nikáyv? as well t as 'in an thka? question. Additional specifications of the alternatives have been added to wake an appropriate answer poasible.
(3.50) Q. ka? niká:yv? toi nikú: ti yusa?kunývinis
which PRT-it-ib-iying that PRT-then she-makes-food-for-you Which one of them (femaleo) is cooking for you?
(3.51) Q. uhka? ni:se? yusafkunyvinis who PRT-you she-makes-food-for-you Who is cooking for you?

However, these alternatives are ubuilly provided by the social context or else by the conversation that preceded. As a result, further specification
is redundant.
(1i) which place/where: the locative pro-form The locative pro-form
ka? 'which' usually occurs with a locative qualifier ka? nu:we which is deleted before a noun, and/or in rapid apeech.
(3.52)
Q. ka? $\quad$. ne érhar
which (place) NOM dog
Where is the dog?

In leas rapid speech, we can find expanded forms such as follows:
Q. which PRT-place PRT-'there-abouts' that PRT-it-is-1ying Where abouta are
nakáhta
NOM-my-shoe
my shoes?
:
(iii) which time/when: the temporal pro-form The temporal qualifier cannot be deleted. However, the question phrase can be substituted by kátke 'when'. This latter form is used more frequently in conversations than its equivalent ka? nikaháwi 'which time'.
(3.54)

Teacher:


When will you be able to eat the wax beane?

## (3.54)

Student:

$$
A_{1} . \quad \text { (silence) }
$$

Teacher:

| $Q_{2}$. | ka? | nikahá:wi | nvhseke? | norhótseri |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | which | PRT-it-is-carrying | NOM-you-will-eat | NOM-wax-bean | In which season will you eat the wax beans?

## Student:

| $A_{2}$ | akvhá:ke |
| ---: | :--- |
| in-summer |  |

In the summer.

Temporal question phrases are usually more specific than ka?tke questions.
(3.55) Q. ka? na?ohseró:tv? niyakonyaku
which PRT-winter-is-(a)-kind PRT-she-was-married Which year was she married?

An appropriate answer indicates the year of the marriage. In a ka?tke question, an appropriate answer could have encompassed such general answers as in (3.56) or (3.57).
(3.56) A. akohserá:ike
in-winter
In the winter.
(3.57) A. kwá kv? náhe?
quite this PRT-?-is-1ong
A long time ago.

### 3.3.6.2 What and Who. oh naho:tv? 'what' is in comple-,

 mentary distribution with uhka? 'who'; oh nahó:tv? applies to nominals that are marked [-human], whereas úhka? applies to those marked [thuman]. In (3.59) to (3.63) the agent is requested.Teacher:*

> Q. uhka? thi raya?tyú:nt
> who that-one he-1s-laying-down
> Who ts laying down?
(3.59) Q. uhka? ki
who this-one
Who is this?
(3.60)

Teacher:

> Q. nahótv? $\begin{aligned} & \text { PRT-i-is-(a)-kind this-one } \\ & \\ & \text { What is this? }\end{aligned}$
> (3.61) Q. uhka? yusa?kunyf:nis
>
> who someone-makes-food-for-you
>
> Who is cooking for you?
(3.62) (NOT ACCEPTABLE because oh nahóty? does not contain a [+human] feature.)
Q. nahó:tv? yusa?kumyv:nis

PRT-1-18-(a)-kind someone-makes-food-for-you
What (a parson) in cooking for you?
*Classroom questions and answers are set apart from everyday ones by always indicating the speaker (teacher/student) in the former examples; in the latter the speaker is never indicated.
(3.63)

Student:
A. raksá:?a
little-boy
A 11ttle boy.
(3.64)

Student:
A. kah1?sí: ?a
several-fixuit
Several fruits.
(3.65) A. érhar
dog
A dog.
(3.66) A. onútara?
soup
A soup.

In the above series of questions and anowers, (3.58), (3.59), and (3.61) ask for an maver of type (3.63). (3.60)-xequests such answers as (3.64), (3.65), and (3.66). Queation (3.62) is inappropriate if it demands an agent or (3.63) as an answer type. However, it is acceptable 1f the information requeet is [-human]. The question then takes on the following meaning: 'What is one cooking for you?'. Then (3.66) would become an acceptable answer. Notice, however, that it is rated as a rather impolite question; what could be worse than questioning the capacity of the cook?
oh nahôttv? (3.60) and uhka? (3.61) request nominal constituents in their answers. Of the two, only oh as found in (3.67) and (3.68)
can request a verbal constituent.
Q. oh káti niyatyérha

WH then PRT-they-are-doing ${ }^{\text {² }}$
What are they doing?
A. yahriokami:nces
they-put-in-1ine
They are fiohing.
oh can alno be delceed. This deletion occurs very frequently in Kanesatake converanticas.
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { Q. (oh) na?akoyál:taw } & \text { nakewi:ra } \\ \text { (MI) PRT-1t-happens-to-her-body } & \text { NOM-my-baby }\end{array}$
What is happening to my boby?
A. wa?akosuhsolaré:wahte
she-hurt-finger,
She hurt her finger.

### 3.3.6.3 Why. The 'why' question in Mohawle an be intro-

duced by oh nutyé: ry or by yâh kv.

$A_{1}$. tôka núu:wa ronusá?tane
perhaps now he-is-sick
Perhape he is alck.
(3.69) $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$. "yah tehoyó? tc?
not he-vorks
He fon't working?
$A_{2}$. yah
no
No.
$Q_{3}$. yäh kv
no Q
Mo?
$A_{3}$. yalh thalué: if
not he-2a-ble
He lon't oble (to work).

A convazacton can ocne with oh nutyenty but not with yáh ky.
 requece of furthor gophation of tho nogetive otobornt. The agroer that Eollown will almeg occur th the form of a negativa otatcont. The equi-


 blag, but not oo oh pugyetey erquecto.
3.3.G.l How. The adverbial quostion chat agken for the amonn, number, cles, dibence, mooure, otc. ic almyo-Introduced by to.

> Q. to niháte thi :kv
> how PRT-them thet-one
> How many are chere of 'them?
(3.71) Q. to niyó:re yasenikwá:tho
how prt-it-is-far you (dual)-would-go-there
How far vould you go?

When the adverbial question phrase contains the qualifier ni:yot 'the nanner'/'the vay', the preceding question word can either be to 'how', or oh 'NH': 'In soze conterts, they seem to be interchangeable as structural, equivaleats, whereas in others they are not. 0 .
oh
(3.72) Q. oh ni:yot, tsi sahsahtvtyuhe
WH PRT-it-is-like that you-vould-get-back
How would you get back?
A. bo?sexehtätke
by-car
By car.
(3.73)
Q. oh ni:yot
tsi tsatatenúhkye
UT PRS-ic-is-like that you-two-are-related-to-one-another How are you related to him?
A. utyara?sé:?a
we-are-cousin-to-onomnother
We are cousins.

```
(3.74) (Acciptable but infolite)
```



```
                    How do you make the soup?
                    (A COMPLTHCNT)
        \(Q_{2}\). oh ahboyéring coi satkátotu
            3 PR PR-you-go-doing-1t that you-make-soup
                How do you go about cooking the soup?
```

            A. ó:nvate, têhnu atwninuskèna asehbht:?a alate thi
            it-com and iselling-may vegatable all, that-one
            Hth com and vegetableo fron the store,
    
I-prepare then Noit I-uilr-it on-atove I-irill-put-pot-on
I propare then all by maxing shen in a big pot that I put
i
on the stove.
to
(3.75) Q. to ni:yot ne satyatimut
how pre-ic-io-like won your-dress
ERos is your dross (coming)?
A. ko
here
Here. (Gave a look.)

The two coto on ne:yot quationo (oh and io) are in cozplemencary diocrbubica. But hou can a hacive opaber aloct che approprate

Wh monphata? A quadion that aoko about relation definitcly otares wifh ohe, 0 in (3.73) . to is definicely used in a quection that involves a procoss. In (3.75), the adrixcsoee wance to see how the dress is made. Let us thus postulate for the time being that to ni:yot quationn inquire cucluoively about a procebs. oh nityor quoctions may also inquire about a proceos. Honever, oh nizyot camnot replace to in all process questions; (3.75) is such an example.
(3.74) falls into thio growp there oh Misyot may replace to *
 oubsticute for to mboyaring how do you go about ...' and clicits the same type of casvax. In both motances, hovever, the quastion io considered to be impolite, since it implies that the cook's capectey is doubted. In oxder to ronder chio quescion cocially aceopeable, ta have to replace co níyoct by oh niharexiza, an in ( $3.74 \mathrm{Q}_{2}$ ).
xt is clear thon ciat to Mingotha, but not to nityot, is to be uecd-though oo an Inpolite requat, as in ( 3.7 th $Q_{1}$ ). The reacon Eor this
 cotion there oh nisvoc can be used to replace to ntiyot. It secrs that the we of to nd:yot is noze norangy dochred then ehat of oh nifyot. He need to have rore dete to comitr or to madisy ouch rather gencral obacrvacions.

Henores, of con aimply roptace to an com instaces, such as in the follering exaplon, (3.76) and (3.77). (3.77) is mare instatent than (3.76). A dacomocracioa io expoctod in (3.77), vaerano in (3.76) only a verbal cancrat io requestan $(\mathrm{cx},(3.76 \mathrm{~A})$ ).


In ccacluotion, to have firat deacribed aurfoce fentureo of Hoherk questions, concluding it with a det of morphologically doceraincd Wh catogozies. We then ohoved hou sotio of thece categozico ate wod. The lactor study is of prolininary nature. Subocquate data io neceooary in oxder co verting end/or modify howa of the sbove cboervationo.

## 3.1) Symean of Mohat Disitactive Queselono.

Dicjunctiva questions have received nuch atconeton in syntars oricnsed Ifterature, and lid quagtons to a much looser degrec. We sholl thuo
 conocruction and apply thon to lohent deta.

Diojuncrive utecronceo are sicmoJied in lohelk by the
 an interrogacive diojunct.

he-goen $Q$ or $Q$ not he-cpes Io ho going or ion't he cotag?
 jwace but nevar an Interrogativa one.



clorant ky functiono as a quodtion parcicta. Langacker'o aoounpthon that queotion particles might dexive fron rodelo or conjuncclows to thus conctotent with oue findiage. Wo con furchor cobe chis counaption by corrcicefing theiz ourenco pondeno. There is a waveronl tendcacy for codalo to occupy the onatcantal oocond

 opectal casco of drojunctive quotiong. Thear cho ocome conjunce
 'secechod' oforent (in cocond"pocition) to the veceronco-intelal conotrituas.

## 

 to the negocton (overt oynactic category) of the other, In hohinh
 of the ${ }^{9} \mathrm{x}$ or not-3' diolcactive type (3.001):
(3.00) (i) (o) trohse? ky latu kv yoh thohoct you-co Q or Q noc sou-co Aco yen gotrs or omo you pot gotpe?

(3.80 iv) shovo the unmaxked yeomo form; (3.e0 itit) ofgatithoo heot.m tation; (3.30 ii) exprecued in lov degrec or troaczonce; crd (3.80 1) mthe full fom of ( 3.80112 ) -0 high dogrec of tropetcrece and a denond for chartacotion.

0
Fsou thetha a gynacelcally oricned vicapolnes wo propooo that the vericnes th (3.00) are the roout of the application of a
 1974) and Scockrol1, Schachear and Parece (1973). For Eurehox conEentr on thio topic, cec Hoomote 9.

Whina coaverontion, who hound pother 'x or notm'
 which aster for a yormo maner. Such a conobeverion occrimedy
 $\gamma$

The for cataple, the followne convoroobzonol con-




## Speaker 2 then questiona Speaker 1:

## (3.81)

Speaker 2:

- $Q_{1}$. 6:nv kv
nov Q
Alroody?

$\because \begin{aligned} & s_{1} \text { hy } \\ & \text { yes }\end{aligned}$
Yos.

Speaker 2:
$\infty$


### 3.4.2 Diofunctive quection Iype ' $X$ on' $x^{\prime}$.

In two nayo, ' $X$ ox $X$ ' quontione are roxe complicated aynenctically

(1) They ens hove roxe then too dojusect. Loot of the
 Ifulted to tro debuncta. Comoqumbtyo wo ohat mocnte onyonvon to tho onolyoco of gucotiong with onty no dicjuacto.
(i1) There io no ainele. ovext ampactle conegory on in
 Fould mazt tho vattety of coment, congmota sin ${ }^{\prime} \mathrm{x}$ or $\mathrm{x}^{\prime}$ g quogtonn.

Conercoto whehin the " $x$ or $X^{\prime \prime}$ degvacto nghe be vithin the catogory (14atod fran the mont to tho Jonot Exoguone) of


 6 電 ,

Agreament within the dtafunctive conctexction to ununily found betroen the voxbo; wheos the voxb (nctivley) for groncloned, the matn very in the accond dugunct punt egrec in ay reapecto whth that of the fitnt ane. If the matr verb of tho necond duJunct lo dacnticol to that of eho xfine ddojunct, temy bo dolesed complecoly. Dhojumeen con uadergo vardown othem roductiono thich ve nholl 111 worate by ellipato poredtran. Dotoctono. homevor, nomely occur in tho flrot dunjuct. hary nevex nffect the lartent alcerate corzying the conemone botcoon the dinjuactu.

 reduction.

## Nucbex

$$
\gamma \dot{y}
$$


 bens he have thate coso or:
i

 donc be hrive Kour comet


Obtuce
 Vould you urat to detak butk or
wonhach：tra？（full fora）


（b）caiten？ly vomhmollisa？Ghtu ky ohnç：kanus
nuth $Q$ youmblin－dxink－uquid or 0 water $k$ bonta you went to driat mut on woens？
（c）onin：en？（iv）Eacus（！v）ohac：poms 12
mats（ $Q$ ）or（i）betcer
mut on vneon？

Agent
 you $Q$ goumaroflegt ow $Q$ Theron showis－itrat

勺ッロー

 Wors you femak ar 20ns ：－\％

Acsunty
（3．35）（n）convarater（kv）tatu（iv）snecquachal：nun（full fom） ycemank－mat（Q）or（Q）you－ncly－n2nt
Do you ont the tant on to you sell the kant
 you-antw nat (Q) or (Q) youmon-ic Do you ont bla woat ur do you deth le? |

The oIntpoon we have nhown above are fovomest by who shreo folfonthy zulow.
(1) ObIget bit Iajocton Thin ruln dotocen th tho oocond dojwhet
 noth in jncomponeted. Didetich applion to woun phenom thnt neo
 nown acto es a gualifyng nown to the strot treornotarad noun.








1




from its bound counterpart, the agent enclitic. After Identical Verb Deletion rule within the secopd disjunct has been applied, the agent noun phrase alone remains as theme of the utterance ( 3.84 b ).

These examples are descriptive of most of the ' $X$ ' or $X$ ' questions in my corpus. They illustrate that first of all the categories in contrast are identical within their'syntactic scope. For example, in ( 3.83 ), the contrasted category in $X_{1}$ and $X_{2}$ is that of the object noun phrase." It is to be noticed, however, that the lexical items filling the obfect noun phrase position share the semantic feature [ +liquid ]. It thus appeaxs that in addition to the identity of syntactic category, identity of semantic func"tion is a prerequisite for the more common, acceptable ' $X$ or $X$ ' disjunctive questions. ${ }^{13}$

In this section, we have been dealing with interrogative surface features of WH questions ${ }^{14}$ at the morphological level, and with disjunctive questions at the syntactic level. Syntacticosemantic aspects of WH and disjunctive questions shall be treated within a discourse framework in the next section.

1. This subgroup can further, be reduced to ' $X$ or' in Mohawk. Some 5 examples will be cited later on in this thesis.
2. In either case, ka? 'which' always occurs with the qualifier niká:yv?' one'.
3. né:ne is a contracted form of né:?e ne 'CLFT NOM', cleft 'marker' and nominal particle.
4. In Kanesatake, the variant form ka? nukwa 'which side' has replaced the full form ka? nukwa:ti in everyday conversations.
5. I have found oh nahó:tv? used in the past. It is not clear to us which aspect(s) the suffix -ses represents. Perhaps it is a free morpheme.

Full Form
Variant
Eng11sh Trans-
oh nahó: tv?ses lation Equivalent
oh na? $+\mathrm{h}+\mathrm{o}$ ? tv + ? + ses
WH PRT + ? + be (a) kind/ + PNCT + past sort/ thing

Example:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { Q. nahó:tv?ses náa thi } & \text { kanyf:te?s } \\
\text { PRT-?-was-(a)-thing maybe that-one she-comes-for-purpose }
\end{array}
$$

$\begin{array}{ll}\text { A. ukwehú:we knahó:tv?k * } & \text { kvná:?a } \\ \text { Indian } & \text { some-PRT-?-is-(a)-thing TAG }\end{array}$
It has something to do with Indians, doesn't it?
-? is in the process of disappearing in Kanesatake Mohawic.
$\bar{*}$ (contracted form of ok naho:tv? ki 'some PRT-it-is-(a)-thing this-one')
6. In the texts of Hewitt, oh still carries lexical meaning (p. 258, (13, 14):
Q. oh ne nahó:tv? ne tsi
what NOM PRT-?-is-(a)-thing NOM where What thing is that,

```
        nahó:tv? ` sa:tu?
        PRT-?-is-(a)-thing thou-art-saying
```

        the thing that thou sayest?
    7. For a highly developed study on this subject, see the excellent thesis of Hanni Woodbury on Noun Incorporation in Onondaga.
8. It seems that deletion of kv 'question particle' is subject to social constraints. For instance, older speakers in Kanesatake who use more Mohawk than English omitted kv much more frequently than young speakers who use more English than Mohawk.
9. Langacker has sketched derivational rules for English yes-no. questions as follows (1974, p. 22):

$$
\begin{align*}
& W H+O R\left[[\text { he can swim' }] \quad\left[\text { not }^{*}[\text { he can swim }]\right]\right]==>  \tag{1}\\
& \text { Conjunction Distribution }
\end{align*}
$$

(ii) $[\mathrm{WH}+\dot{\mathrm{O} R}[$ he can swim $]][\mathrm{WH}+\mathrm{OR}[$ not $[$ he can swim $]]]==>$ Conjunct Deletion: a
(ii1) $[\mathrm{WH}+\mathrm{OR}[$ he can swim $]]\left[\mathrm{WH}+\mathrm{OR}\left[\right.\right.$ not $\left[\right.$ he $\left.\left.\left.\operatorname{can}^{\prime 2}\right]\right]\right]==>$ Conjunct Deletion: b
(iv) [ WH + OR [ he can swim ] [ WH + OR [ not ]] ==> WH + OR NOT Deletion
(v) $[\mathrm{WH}+\mathrm{OR}[$ he can swlm $]] \Rightarrow$ Subject Auxillary Inversion
(vi) $[$ WH + OR $[$ can he swim $]]==>$ WH + OR (Whether) Deletion
(vii) Can he swim?

* The negative formation is not further discussed in this paper as it is irrelevant to the topic. Notice, however, that the negation, as a sentential adverbial, occurs in the form of yah/yahtv 'no'/'definitely no'. If attached to the verb, yah 'not' co-occurs with an obligatory enclitic: te-/th- 'negation', prefixed to the verb.

Notice that we have omitted the governing performative clause which Langacker has proposed as an alternative to $Q$. We shall elaborate in more detafl in Chapter Four upon a semantic approach to questions that includes the performative reading.

In Mohawk, for a yes-no question, derivations as illustrated below apply. Between Conjunction Distribution and Conjunct Deletion, there is an obligatory KATU Lowering rule (Lang, 1970), yielding (iii). With the application of this rule KATU is brought into the lowest $S$ of each conjunct, and the question particle $k v^{\prime}$ ís introduced into second position. There is no Subject Auxiliary Inversion as in the above. WH + OR Deletion is only partially applicable in Mohawk: KATU is deleted, but kv is retained and moved into second position.

We suggest that a derivational sketch for wahse? kv "Are you going?' ( 3.80 iv ), would be represented as follows:
(i) KÅTU [ [ wáhse? ] [ yah tháhse? ] ] $==>$ Conjunction Distribution KATU [[ wâhse? ] [ yah thahse? ]] $=2$ conjune (ii) [ KÁTU [ wáhse? ]]. [ KÁTU [ yah tháhse? ]] $==>$ KAT̛U Lowering (1i1) [ KÁTU kv wáhse? ] [ KÁTU kv YAH tháhse? ] $==>$ Confunct Deletion (iv) [KÁTU kv wăhse? ] [KÁTU kv YAH "] $==>$ KATU YAH Deletion (v) [ KÁTU kv wáhse? ] $=\gg$ Initial KATU Deletion (kv switching) wáhse? kv
k'atu' 'or' always implies interrogation. We are omitting the WH morpheme as an inherent quality of KÁTU. The meaning of KÁtU thusfincludes the question feature as well as the meaning of alternation 'or'.
10. There is always the possibility that (3.81) is interpreted as the second conjunct within an ' $X$ or $X$ ' question type. If so, we would be faced with the problem of backward versus forward deletions.
11. Number is a subcategory within the category of qualifiers, Wejshall analyze these separately because numbers in Mohawk generally occur as free forms, whereas the qualifying adjectives usually occur as bound forms. Both can, however, occur as bound or free morphemes.
12. Within a certain context, for instance, when the host asks for a second time, this short form is acceptable.
13. There have been a. few examples, however, that have not followed these above patterns. One example shall illustrate the fact that ' X or X ' quegtion types are much more complex in their contrast than we suggested in the above section. They are difficult to explain on syntactic and semantic grounds. We shall not comment any further on the example, since our focus in this paper is on frequent rather than on rare patterns. .
Q. yah kv ni:se? tho niyo:re tai aki:ru
no $Q$ NOM-you there PRT-it-be-far that I-would-say
I would say that you don't
tyotka:te tyorhf:sha ahsatste tho nukwá tsi
it-is-often In-English you-use there PRT-that-side that
often use English that far over there,

| yah kwa kwi ne tehútsta | néatu ne ni |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| not quite precisely NOM they-use-it or | NOM also |
| do you, (because) they don't use it very much; |  |

né?e rútstha? ne sewateroshúa
too they-use-it NOM your-friends
or your friends, do they use it too?
A. hv, teyvicwayestuhátyeki.
yes, we-mix-it
Yes, we mix It (the languages).
14. According to Langacker (1974), for example, WH questions are subject to the following set of derivations:
(i) WH feature complexes on noun-phrase determiners; and (ii) WH-movement (fronting), attraction of question words to the governing verb.

We believe, however, that these two dertvational processes are closely linked to processes within the discourse. WH feature complexes are associated only with constituents that are under focus. We claim that focus is a discourse operator. We shall thus deal with WH questions in an enlarged framework--that of the discourse.

$$
\therefore \cdot \underset{x}{x=2}
$$

$\Delta$

## CHAFTER FOUR

DISCOURSE FRAME
4.1 Introduction. In the previous chapters, the questions have been treated mostly as isolated entities that contain morphological and syntactic characteristics particular to interrogative sentence types. We hảve identified morphological patterns within questions and syntactic patterns of disjunctive questions. However, the intrinsic nature of questions is to request answers, Answers thus are intimately linked to questions., Questions are not isolated, single units. As 'contextualized' units, they are an integrated part of a sequential organization at the discourse level. As already stated in this paper, we are limiting the scope of our research within the discourse to question and answer sequences only. This implies that aspects not pertinent to this topic shall be briefly mentioned, if not omitted. .

We shall endeavour to sketch a theoretical framawork that ciraumscribes utterances within the discourse. Formal features of questions will henceforward be paired with semantic and contextual ones at the discourse level. This discourse level shall be referred to from within a theoretical frame that accounts for several layers of abstractions marked as spech act conditions (performative and deixes). presuppositions, and facus.

### 4.2 Speech Act Conditions.

### 4.2.1 The Performative (Hyparsentence). Afirst step

toward discourse analysis has been made by Katz \& Postal (1964) who sug-
gested.a semantic interpretation of the base marker $Q$ : 'I ask'. Meaning Is now to le taken into consideration as well as the performance of a speech sct.

Performative analysis (as first advocated by Austin (1962)), has been restated and defined by Ross (1970), Fraser (1971), Schreiber (1972), and Sadock ( 1969,1974 ), to name only a few. The theory asserts that each utterance possesses an illocutionary force, as part of its intrinsic meaning. In pronouncing a question, a speaker refers to himself (as the subject) and the addressee (as the indirect object). The illocutionary force of inquiring, in this case, is indicated by its combined non-performative surface signals such as the question particle and intonation, for example. Within the semantic representation, this illocutionary force is abstracted by the highest clause-called the performative clause. Under certain circumstances, this clause is deleted at some stage of the derivation. If not, the performative clause is encoded in the surface structure. In either case, upon uttering a sentence with a performative that is explicit (4.1), or only implicit (4.2), the same claim is made. A speaker is actu-. ally carrying out the speech act designated by the performative and not merely describing it.

I àk you whether you are going to leave or not. .

Are you going to leave or not?

Though the performative analysis is a controversial issue, Intuitively believe that this aspect of meaning thus represented is a very crucial one, since it is inherently linked to the performance of a speech
act. Dbes a semantic representation, perceived in the form of a speech act, pertain to language structure alone, or also to language usage? Perhaps a simple compartmentalization of meaning is fust not possibles. Questions cannot be considered in isolation from their intended structural. meaning and use (contextual meaning).

Henceforth, it is assumed in this paper that every utterance under analysis contain's a performative reading. We thus postulate that the $Q$ marker for questions in the semantic representation be replaced by a discourse stratum analogous to that of the performative clause. This stratum resembles the complex, higher, abstract structure proposed by Gordon \& Lakoff (1971) and readg as follows: 'I request you to tell me'. We prefer this complex predication hypersentence to the simple one 'I ask you'. The former is mofe descriptive of conversational postulates than the lattef. However, 'ask' shall be used in the place of 'request'. We shail see, at a later point, that the performative verb 'ask' is not general enough. 'request' will be reintroduced for a faw questions. The verb 'tell' also will have to be rediscussed latar in 'the text, since it does not cover all the varieties of assertions asked for.
4.2.2 Discourse Deixes. There is another category that is inherently linkf to the performance of a speech act, the category of deixes (Langacker, 1975), The notion of deixis has been elaborated prior to Langacker (1975) by such 1inguists as McCawley (1971a), and Fillmore (1966, 1973). (yir obervations concerning the link between deixes and the speech act entirely agree with those of Langacker: However, we disagree with him , in respect to the nature of the act itself. Langacker includes
only a speçfic set of deixes, e.g. demonstratives, that he describes as pointing at things. This act is very specific. The speech act as consceived by us'lis to be more general, in order to include all the defxes that refer to the discourse. We thus postulate that the speech act of inquiring 1s -1inked to the act of pointing at time, place, participanta, and manner.

Deixes as defined in this paper are intimately tied to the act of pointing at (i) the speaker, (ii) the hearer; (iii) the time, (iv) the place, and ( $v$ ) the manner of speaking. We might further specify thàt (i) and (ii) refer to the participants in the speech act; (iii) refers to the time during which the act was performed, e.g. today; (iv) refers to the location of the commicative act, e.g. there, here; and (v) refers to the manner (polite/casual) in which communication was perfórmed. Hence, we assume that each utterance is superordinated by an abstract frame of discourse. This frame consists of several layers of discourse utterances of which the highest is that of the performative hypersentence, and the elements of deixis: speaker NP (subject), hearer NP (object), place, time, manner NP (as adverbials) and direct object NP that dominates ' $U$ ', the utterance under analysis. The deixes of speaker, hearer, place, time, and manner will be aymbolized respectively by $a, b, p, t$, and $m$.

For the sake of simplicity, we shall formally represent the performative (short form used subsequently for performative hypersentence) and the deictic elements as coordinate elementa, rather than gubordinate ones, within the discourse frame. Throughout the study, this frame shall be given in the form of (4.3), a near surface representation. We fintend thus to ease its exposition and illustration.
(4.3)

$\because$
(4.3) may be paraphrased as: 'speaker requests from hearer ${ }_{2}$, in a (po1ite/casual) manner $\dot{m}$, in the place $p_{0}$, at the time $t_{0}$, that hearer $b$ should tell speaker a 'U''. A normal question thus reads: 'I a ak in a (polite/casual) manner, in the place $p_{0}$, at the time $t_{o}$, that you tell me 'U''.

We shall not further elaborate the defctic elements in this section, since further reference to participants and setting (time and place) shall be made apecifically in the chapter devoted to sociolinguistic analysis (Chapter Seven). The (deixis of)manner will be commented on briefly since there is no further reference made to this aspect of the discourse.

There is an appropriate manner of talking in Mohawk situations,
where, between participants, respect and therefore politeness are demanded. Some of the recorded questions and/or their answers have been rated as polite ones. Such constructions usually were marked by structural particularities.

For instance, the whimpetative question (5.58) is introduced by a modal word can. Polite regrests for action are often thus introduced. Also, polite questions or answers are of ten signalled by a modal prefix; see ( 4.4 ).

> (4.4) Q. aki:ru kv ne yakorihunyaini kv kín I-could-say-itQ NOM she-is-teacher TAG this-one Could I say that she is a teacher, eh?

There is another way of expressing politeness in questioning as in (4.5), or in answering as in (4.6).

(4.5) Q. thó ne s kv ná:?a thílkv wisk yawv́re nikahwistake then NOM $Q$ maybe that-one five ten . PRT-'dollar' Wasn't it then fifteen dollars that
wahaná: to*, wisk yawvire wasako?tyerú?kwa
he-charged-it, five ten he-would-cake-them
he charged--fifteen to take them there?
A. wisk yawfire sakího táhnu yakwateno?sohokú: ?a thi:kv five ten fakiho and our-other-siblinge that-one Fifteen (dollars) for Sakiho and our other siblings.
(4.6) Q. to nílku tai ruwáhsere
how PRT-1t-18-amount that they-pursue-him How much are they pursuing him for? (after an sccident)


A series of particles, some of them parenthetical verbs, precede the questioned constituent. The hearer 18 thereby very politely prepared for a subsequent question or answer.

Also, there is another. form of politeness today, signalled by the choice of the oparticular feminine pronoun. In Mohawk, there are two ways of referring to a third person female:

| (i) | akáaha | 'she' | FI | (feminine/indefinite) ${ }^{2}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (1i) | äuha | 'she' | FN | (feminine/neuter) |

The former is used when talking about family members and persons considered to be reopectable. Female persons outside the family-teachers and bosses, for example--are referred to most likely by the latter form. Within the family, femalg-ntmbera, under certain negative circumstances, might also be called by the feminine neuter.

One of my corisultants has thus categorized certain persons as being more or less polite, in regard to which form they use during conversations. One family especially was conaidered to be polite because of their frequent use of the indefinite feminine form. In the past, however,
${ }^{\circ}$ women that were of child-bearing age were referred to by the FN , and children and older women by the FI pronoun. Today, this pattern is in the pro-
cess of disappearing. This change evidently reflects a new ideology and new social practices. It reflects the influence that social forces have on linguistic development.
4.3 Presuppositions and Speech Act. The relation of discourse rules to utterances shows several layers of abstraction. Consider, for example, the following dialogue translation equivalent (cf. (6.35)) of a Mohawk conversation:
(4.7),

Speaker $1_{1}$ Q. What indeed shall we say?
Speaker $_{2}$ A. Yes.
Speaker $_{1}$ R. Hm. (Yes.)

To correctly interpret the above dialogue (which is acceptable in Mohawk), we have, to expand discourse räles beyond those of speech acts and defes to those of preconditions. We thus imply that uttered questions and answers exhibit at least two layers of associated conditions:
(i) the semantic aspect of a speech act, discussed previousiy in 4.2;
(11) ' preconditions on the appropriate use of a speech act.

In' this section, we shall confine ourselves to the latter condi.tion, which shall be referred to as discourse presuppositiona. ${ }^{3}$ The term. 'discourse presupposition' is used in the sense of Fillmore ( $1971, \mathrm{p} .380$ ): 'those conditions which must be satisfied before the sentence can be used' for 'asking questions', for example. The condition to which we adhere in this section 18 that of knowledge shared by both speaker and addressee.

Take for example, the question in (4.8).
(4.8) Q. Could you close the door?

We are interested in the discourse presupposition that the speaker shares together with the answerer: the knowledge that question (4.8) does not carry the illocutionary force of asking but of comanding.

Let us now illustrate the discourse presupposition as delineated above by (4.7), a typical Mohawk question-answer sequence. The question can be used appropriately if both speaker and addressee share the same knowledge: a WH question requests new information about the identity of one argument of the proposition, The conveying of new information about the argument necessarily implies that the answerer asserts its propositional truth value. In Mohawk, an answer to a WH question is acceptable if the identity of the argument under question is conveyed, or if its propositional content implied is alone conveyed as an assertion, as in (4.7).

The notion of 'discourse presupposition' as used above, is of pragmatic nature. We shall specify and refine the definition in the sense of Givón (1974, pp. 22-24). 4. We propose that every act of questioning by the concerned speaker and hearer presupposes:
\&
(1) knowledge shared by opeaker and addressee;
(1i) certain unshared elements between hearer and speaker:
(a) knowledge: ' speaker lacks certain knowledge--hearer possesses this particular knowledge,
(b) power: speaker is incapable of obtaining the knowledgehearer is capable of conveying the knowledge,
(c) motivation: speaker wishes to obtain the missing knowledge-
 hearer is disposed to transmit it;
(1i1) that the speaker (and possibly the hearer) consider(s) the'speech act appropriate within the relative social situation. 5

These three items can be illustrated informally as follows.

### 4.3.1 Presuppositions: Shared Knowledge. In Eng1ish,

if someone asks:
(4.9) 'how far are you going on your walk?',
an acceptable, 'polite' answer would be:
(4.10) 'To the woods and back'.

But if someone should ask in Mohawk:

an acceptable answer could be--and was:
(4.12)
oh, kak nụ tetyatekahakwá?nv
oh, some PRT-place we (dual)-go-road
Oh, somewhere we'11 take a walk.

- There is, firatly, a type of shared knowledge contained in (4.11) that specifically refers to the universe shared by both speaker and addressee:
(4.13) The hearer is going to go some place.

Then, there is ahared knowledge contained in (4.11) that 'someone's going ध
somewhere' can be specified in terms of distance: the question (4.11) seems to ask for a specific distance; however, in performance, the Mohawk hearer apparently ignores the specific demand and the identity of the argument under question, and answers with an assertion, the repetition of the underlying indefinite locative within the question. Since the hearer does not even know how far he will go nor where he will go, he reinterprets the question as a 'where' question as in (4.14) that can be answered with an indefinite, assertive response as in (4.12).

(4.14) | ka? nú yosyenikwa: tho |
| :--- |
| which PRT-place you-will-go-there |
| Where will you go? |.

Strangely enough, this is still a 'polite' acceptable answer in Mohawk. Distance is closely linked to place--actually the former seems to be a subcategory of the latter. Further, both speaker and hearer share a knowledge that every Mohawk speaker knows: a question that grammatically asks for a definite distance presupposes in the answer under question either a definite distance that implies assertion of, the proposition under question, or the assertion only of an indefinite locative/distance. The choice is left up to the discretion of the addressee. The indefinite answer (4.12) signals the transmisaion of information-even if incomplete-at hand. In other circumstances; it might signal the incapacity to convey the information either for social or personal reasons or for both.

### 4.3.2 Elements Unshared by Speaker and Addrassee.

(1) Knowledge: In uttering (4.11), for instance, the speaker knows
that the proposition of the uttered question: 'You are going for a walk' is true within the particular discourse context. The question phrase 'how far' indicates, however, that the apeaker lacks the knowledge of the identity of one of the arguments. In (4.11), it is the distance that is unknown. He assumes that the hearer knows the missing information. (1i) Power: The speaker presupposes that the hearer is capable of conveying the information, since he himself is incapable of acquiring it by himself at this particular moment, within this particular situation. (ii1) Motivation: The speaker presupposes that the hearer is disposed to transmit the information in accordance with the speaker's wishes.
4.3.3 Relative Social Context. When (4.11) is uttered, the speaker presupposes--though perhaps weakly--that in the particular social context, it has been appropriate for him to assume the authority of requesting.information. He also assumes that possibly the hearer shares with the speaker such an assumption about the social context.
4.4 Discourse Presuppositions. We use the term discourse presuppositions, as previously stated, in a pragmatic sense. We agree with Muraki (1974) that these presuppositions are presupposed 'by the discourse, that is by both the apeaker and the addressee based on what has been said or implied in the preceding part of the discourse' (p. 21). We shall expand the definition hereafter by including presuppositions discussed above that concern the speaker alone.

The discourse is structured from within Muraki's presuppositional viewpoint. Question (4.14) shall be used as an illustration and is repre-
sented in (4.15):
(4.15) PRSP [ $\triangle$ PLACE GO b ] [ DEFINITE +/TNDEFINITE PLACE GO b ]

It is presupposed (PRSP) by $a$ (speaker) and $b$ (addressee) that $b$ is going to some place. a asserts that it is a definite +/indefinite place where $b$ is going. PRSP is used above as a primitive two-place predicate in semantic representation relating two utterances [ PRSP $U_{1}$ and $U_{2}$ ]: $U_{1}$ is presupposed by a and $b$, while $U_{2}$ is asserted by $a . U_{1}$ is thus presupposed for $U_{2}, U_{1}$ is called the 'discourse presupposition'; $U_{2}$ is called the 'assertion'. The constituents in $U_{2}$ identical with those in $U_{1}$ are at a later stage deleted. A represents a dumm element that becomes a non-dumary element within the assertion. This element will be called 'focus'. The notion of focus is thus concelved as a discourse operator. (4.12) is not marked with respect to ita illocutionary force of inquiring. We shall modify (4.15) by incorporatingia performative as the topmost utterance within the assertion (4.16). This predicate does not appear on the surface.

PRSP [ $\triangle$ PLACE GO b ] [ ASK ab [ TELL b a [ DEFINITE +/INDEFINITE PLACE GO b ]l]
$a$ and $b$ presuppose that $b$ is going to some place, $a$ asks $b$ to tell $a$ the definite $+/$ indefinite ${ }^{8}$ place that $b$ is going to.

In order to further spectify the presuppositional content \%f the speech act of inquiry with respect to the speaker alone, we shall revise (4.16) as follows in (4.17):
(4.17) PRSP [ $\left.\operatorname{PRCD}\left[\mathrm{U}_{1}\right]\right] \quad\left[\operatorname{PRFR}\left[\mathrm{U}_{2}\right]\right]$

Preconditions (PRCD) are an embedded subset of discourse presuppositions such as knowledge, power, and motivation, which a assumes that $b$ possesses In order to convey the missing information, the definite +/indefinite place. ${ }^{9}$
4.5 Presupposition and Focus. Presuppositions play an important part within the flow of conversations. As seen above, their recurrence in successive sentences guarantees partially, at least, the effectiveness of verbal interaction. Within conversation, often the presupposed material is deleted and that which remains is the constituent under focus.

We claim that the focus originates in the structure of the discourse, particulariv in relation to what has preceded. The speaker marks one or several elements of the utterance as informationally focal. Focus does mostly, though not always, correspond to assertion or new information. It correlates, for example, to the speaker's attitude as to the truth value of the proposition, his positive or negative assertions, or to missing information in the WH question.

Focus assignment is closely linked to cleft and stress assignment: clefting or emphatic stress assignment apply only to constituents that are marked by the focus within the discourse. In the answer (4.19) to question (4.18), an emphatic stress on the surface marks the answer as unambiguous.
$\begin{array}{rll}\text { (4.18) Q. nahó:tv? } & \text { érhar wa?okári } \\ & \text { PRT-?-ig-(a)-thing dog } & \text { it-bit-it }\end{array}$
What did the dog bite?
A. takó:s, érhar walokáa:ri
cat , dog 1t-bit-it
The dog bit a cat.

In the semantic representation, the object was first marked by [ FOCUS ], (cf. Muraki). ${ }^{10}$ It then recelved the emphatic stress and subsequently was moved to the front of the utterance. An interval between object and rabject further reinforces phonetically the stress asaignment on the surface. This example does not represent all the possible variants. It confirms, however, Muraki's hypothesis that focus and stress assignment are closely 1inked together and, therefore, are an inherent part within a presuppositionally sensitive discourse gramar.

In what follows, we shall illustrate the interaction between (1) focus and assertion; (4i) focus and clefting in respect to questions In Mohawk, and (iii) focus and information reduction.
4.5.1 Focus and Assertion. The WH morphemes are the constituents-within the assertion--that bear focus; the rest is presup-家 posed by the speaker. We might thus identify WH (in the sense of Katiz \& Pástal (1964)) as indefinite 'SOME' that received discourse focus as shown in (4.20):

SOME X ==>
WH $X$
[ FOCUS ]
( X is a pro-form of NP subclasses )

In Mohawk, when indefinite pronouns such as uhkak 'someone' receive focus, they undergo morphophonemic changes---k $\Rightarrow>\left\{\begin{array}{l}-? \\ -h \\ -0\end{array}\right\}$ as in uhkak 'someone'
$\stackrel{=}{=}>$ uhka? 'who'--rather than morphological changes as in the English: 'someone' $==>$ 'who'. This holds true for all the following WH morphemes:

4.5.2 Focus and Clefting. 11 There are several analyses proposed on cleft sentences in English and other languages, including those of Almsjian (1970), Ross (1972), and Muraki (1974). We propose that the process of clefting is closely linked to focus, 12
(4.22) $Q_{1}$. yoltkáte? kv né:?e tesenithárha? ukwehuiwehnéha it-is-often $Q$ CLFT you-talk-together genuine-people's-way Is it often that you talk together in Indian?
$A_{1}$. yah teyo?tkéate? ne:? tehfotha? kowanéha not 1t-is-often CLFT they-use-it genuine-people's-way (No), it is not often that they use Indian
nukwanúhsku
PRT-in-our-houre
in our house,

```
(4.22) }\mp@subsup{Q}{2}{}\mathrm{ . hv (rising intonation)
    yes
    Yes, really?
```

    \(\begin{array}{llll}A_{2} \text {. neyoltká:te? ne tyorhv́sha né:ne } & \text { o?seruni?kéha } \\ \text { PRT-it-is-often } & \text { NOM in-English CLFT-NOM in-French }\end{array}\) It is often (that they use) English and French.
    In cleft question (4.22), the focal constituent precedes the particle ne:?e, which is one of the possible elements that has a function in clefting. The presupposed constituent follows the element under focus as a subordinate sţructure. In opting for Muraki's formalization, the declarative counterpart of ( $4.22 \mathrm{Q}_{1}$ ) --leaving out the object--will be generalized as follows in (4.23):
(4.23) PRSP [ $\triangle$ TALK TOGETHER YOU ] [ [ OFTEN + FOCUS ] TALK TOGETHER YOU ]

Clefting may only apply there where a constituent contains [ + FOCUS ]. In Mohawk, it seems that verbs and negations, for example, may be focussed and consequently clefted, as in (4.24). (4.24) yáh kv né:?e tehota?nyotanúne
not $Q$ CLFT he-went-(to-a)-feast
He did not go to the wedding?

This example is supportive of the hypothesis that negation is a higher predicate. If the preceding assumption is true;' we might then presume that clefted utterances are only derived optionally from unclefted ones. Apparently, not every clefted utterance has an unclefted version. The non-dummy element of the assertion which corresponds to the dumany in the presiupposition 1s the element under focus.

Later in the derivation, the focus-bearing element is raised to the next higher predicate position and the remaining structure is changed into a subordinate clause structure, (see footnote 13). On the surface, the focussed element might be indicated, for instance, by né:?e, or as in example (4.19), by the emphatic stress.

Clefting in ( $4.22 Q_{1}$ ) does not contribute any information to the scope of focus. The questioned constituent is already under focus (kv functions here as a focus marker). It signifies that in a question-answer-situation, the speaker presupposes the hearer's knowledge of the answer and his, capacity to convey it. $A$ 'no' as a reply would imply, therefore, that information is withheld. Thus, a 'no' has to be further specified, as in ( $4.22 \mathrm{~A}_{2}$ )..$^{14}$

### 4.5.3 Focus and Information Reduction. If (4.23) is

 uttered as an answer to ( $4.22 Q_{1}$ ) on the surface, the focussed constituent yoftká:te? 'it-is-offen' alone might be retained; all the other constituents, thus presupposed, can be deleted. Deletion is one of the manifestations within the economy of the discourse. Once old and new information have beep stated within a dialogue, deletion of non-focussed constituents can take place. The reduction process can be of syntactic or phonological nature such as pronominalization, stress reduction, equi-NPdeletion, etc. Information Reduction is universal, whereas the form of the reduction process has language-specific constraints. In Mohawk, pronominalization prevails over deletion, even more so than in English. We ascribe this fact to the nature of the Mohawk verb which cannot occurwithout its pronominal referents. Further, the pronouns are more elaborated in Mohawk than in English: , lst person singular; lst person dual inclusive/exclusive; lst person plural inclusive/exclusive; 2nd person singular/dual/plural; 3rd person singular masculine/feminine neuter/ feminine indefinite; and 3 rd person dual/plural.feminine and/or nomfeminine. It thus follows that pronominalization within the Mohawk discourse is less apt to be ambiguous than in English, e.g. (4.25):
(4.25). S. Last week, John and Fred visited their family.
Q. Did they have fun together?

In English, it is not clear whether the question concerns the family plus John and Fred, "or simply just John and Fred. In Mohawk, this is clear from the type of pronoun used: they (dual), for example, refers unambiguously to John and Fred.

Pronominalization is indeed so extensively used in discourse that non-native speakers often havế difficulties interpreting correctly the referents in conversations or texts in Mohawk. The Mohawk apeaker, however, is not aware of such problems. He appropriately identifies the pronominal referents used by anothex speaker and, in turn, succesefully carries on the process of pronominalization when speaking. Nevertheless, this process is only possible, once the discourse referents are established between speaker and addressee in the beginning of the discourse.

The general process of reduction can be stated informally approximately as follows:
(4.26)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Rightarrow \begin{array}{lllll}
\Rightarrow & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4
\end{array} \\
& .5\left\{\begin{array}{c}
\mathrm{PRO} \\
\varnothing
\end{array}\right\} 7 \quad 8 \\
& \text { Condition: } 3-6 \text {, A is a varlable over } U \text {, NP, } V \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

The formulation places the reduction into the non-initial conjunct under identity of elements in two juxtaposed utterances. This reduction process (4.26) occurs in the frame of the discourse and not in the frame of the sentence alone.

Yet pronominalization is not the only reduction process. In question-answer pairs, deletion seems to prevail over pronominalization. This is a language-miversal phenomenon. In Mohawk question-answer pairs, * we have noticed, however, that deletion does not always occur, and this for stylistic reasons, e.g. (4.27).
(4.27)

Speaker $_{1}$
Q. yakotalkari:te (kv)

Is she fine?.


Speaker $_{2}$
A. hv, yakota?kari:te
yes, she-is-fine
Yes, she is fine.

Speaker $_{1}$
R. hv, yakota?kar1:te yes, she-is-fine
Yes, she is fine.

In (4.27), a yes-no answer is requested. The proposition is repeated by the answerer and, in return, by the questioner also. This creates a certain conversational rhythm which is typical of speech acts in semi-formal visitations. In a rapid conversation, around the table for instance, minimal answers and also minimal questions are preferred:
(4.28) The telephone rings. Mother answers. John then asks his mother:
Q. unka? thi
who this-one
Who was it?
A. tsohké:r1

Tsohkeri
(It was) Tsohker1.

For further examples of possible deletions, see Chapter Three.
In sumary, the following semantic elements that compose a dis-course-oriented gramar have been outlined in this section. We have indicated a way of dealing with question-answer formation as inherently tied to the performance of a speech act and, to discourse deixas. Speech act preconditions were then treated in the form of presuppositions which we claim to be basic in the syntactic shaping of questions and answers. Finally, focus as a discourse operator was related to emphatic stress, assertion, clefting, and information reduction.

## FOOTNOTES TO CHAPTER FOUR

1. We are opting fo this performative hypersentence 'I ask you to tell me' for cultural reasons. When a question'is asked, a Mohawk speaker expects an answer. However, the force of a question is usually not that of a demand or request. Asking signifies leaving broad options for the answerer, as discussed in Chapter Six. Even the choice of who is to be the answerer is not very direct; people usually are not named when approached with a question.

## ,

2. Morphologicaliy, these pronouns can occur as variable enclitics with nouns and verbs. The FI is used for persons whose gender is unknown, or thought of as irfelevant; for indefinite persons, referred to in English by 'one', and for female human beings. The FN is used for all inanimate objects, female animals, animals of unspecified sex, and female human beings.
3. Questions and answers have been treated for some time in the literature as presuppositional. For répresentative illustrations, see Schachter (1973), and Murak1 (1974).
4. The discourse presuppositions in this section correspond to presuppositions that are inherently tied to the speech act (see Givón, 1974): Gordon \& Lakoff's, conversational postulates, in particular 'the convention governing the felicity of usage of speech acts, are considered, in this paper, 'as a subset of discourse presuppositions' (p. 15)..
5. The interaction between the intention and context is much more complex. If, for example, the social hierarchy represented by the participants is taken into conaideration, this is the case:
6. This question-answer pair (4.11) and (4.12) actually occurred within a conversation at Kanesatake. The answer was daemed satisfactory by the interlocutor.

7: W1th respect to disjunctive questions, the speaker presupposes that a certain proposition is possibly true (yes-no question).
8. An answer that relates a definite place informs and asserts the question; an answer that relates an indefinite place abserts the question constituent. Also, it appears that this type of assertive information is
as acceptable as the type of answer thad contains new information. It is not alear to us yet how to interpret and represent such a questionanswer system.
9. We shall not insist upon further formalization. Muraki (1974) is to be consulted on this subject.
10. We are not entering the debate of whether, within the semantic representation, the focus can or cannot be marked. In this paper, we take the position that focus assigment is a semantic process. It, therefore, is accounted for within the discourse framework.
11. I am indebted to Marianne W1lliams who indicated clefting in Mohawk to me during a personal conversation.
12. We shall not discuss in this paper the possibility of pseudo-cleft gentences, although we have found some evidence of their existence in Mohawk:

> Q. oicai sakîho thé* ki né:?e yehahuráhas also Sakiho eaything Q CLFT he-takes-gun Is that what Sakiho also takes-a gun?
> *thé is a contracted form of othé:nu 'anything'

On this subject, we refer the reader to Akwajian (1970), Higgins (1973), Schachter (1973), and Eankamer (1974).
13.


Near-aurface representation of (4.24).

At some point within the derivation, U receives focus assignment, as in the above representation. The circled NP becomes a subordinated construction. We shall not further elaborate on the transformational patterns.
14. Such presuppositional behaviour of clefted yes-no questions in Navajo. has been discussed by Kaufman (1975). Her thesis on complex questions in Navajo is highly recommended.

## CHAPTER FIVE <br> QUESTION TYPES

5.1 Introducition. The semantic' (presuppositional) nature of questions and answers as discussed in the previous chapter is sufficiently general that we feel obliged to further specify different meanings as correlated to forms. Questions and their answers in linguistic literature are generally viewed as umarked or marked. This polar distinction is based on the criterion of usage: 'ummarked' implies situation unspecific question-answer types, and 'marked' implies situation specific question-answer types. This section shall thus be divided into two major divisions: the umarked question types in 5.2 , and the marked question types in 5.3.

Henceforth, the mapping of questions and answers will be wi, thin the framework of the diacourse. This frame shall not always be stated explicitly, nor shall all its indices be. Whatever is irrelevant to a particular discussion shall be ignored. Presuppositions will be referred to only when we consider them to be relevant.
5.2 Unmarked Question Types. Questions contrast among themselves not only on syntactic but also on semantic grounds. We shall briefly enlarge upon syntactico-semantic contrasts of umarked question types such as:
(1) Disjunctive questions
(i1) WH questions
(1i1) Complex questions

### 5.2.1 Disfunctive Questions. The disfunctive questions

were discussed from a syntactic point of view in Chapter Three. In this section, we shall integrate them, as speech act entities, into a discourse frame (near-surface representation).

## $\therefore$ 5.2.1.1 ' X or not-X' Questions.

' $X$ or not-X' Variant (Theme or not-Theme Question)
(5.1)

(5.1) is a semantic representation of (5.2).
(5.2) vhoyó?tv kv kátu kv yah thahoyó?tv
he-will-work $Q$ or $Q$ not he-will-work
Is he going to work or isn't he going to work?
(One is not veny pleased with the wriker.)
On the surface, the performative is deleted. An appropriate answer would be hv 'yes' plus proposition, or yah 'no' plus proposition, but never hvis or yah alone. The proposition, when asarted or negated, has then to be restated. In a yes-no question, however, hv or yah are acceptable answers.
' $X$ ' Varlant (Yes-No Question) The second disjunct, which contains the negation, is deleted at some point within the derivation.


On the surface, we are left with a positive conjunct:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { vhoyó?tv kv }  \tag{5.4}\\
& \text { he-wll1-work } Q \\
& \text { Is he going to work? }
\end{align*}
$$

We are not really clear how to account for the differences between the ' $X$ ' and the ' $X$ or not $2 X$ ' variants. At this point it seems to us that differences are to be dealt with in semantic tepms. The following representatenponare thus a first attempt to inquire into discourse properties of the two question variants: ' $X$ ' and ' $X$ or not $-X$ '.

We suggest that (5.4) can be represented by (5.5), and (5.2) by (5.6):
(5.5) $\operatorname{PRSP}[\triangle[$ WORK HE $]]\left[\operatorname{OR}[\text { AFFIRM [WORK HE }]_{1}\right]$
[ NEG [WORK HE ] $]_{2}$ ]
(5.6) $\operatorname{PRSP}[\triangle[$ WORK HE $\left.]] \quad[\text { OR [AFFIRM [WORK HE }]_{1}\right]$
[ NEG [.WORK HE ] ${ }_{2}$ ]]
Condition: Focus assigned to conjunct ${ }_{1}, 2^{\text {. }}$
Deletion of conjuncts can apply to (5.5) because of lack of focus.
As we can see from these formulae, the semantic content for a yes-no question is not entirely identical to that of the ' $X$ or not- $X$ ' question.

In (5.5), the speaker asks the addressee whether the proposition is true or false. In other words, the speaker presupposes that the addressee is familiar with the truth vialue of the proposition. In (5.6), the speaker still asks for theaffirmation arnegation of the truth value. Only his explicit statement of the theme or not-theme polarity obliges the addressee In turn to restate the one theme affirmed or negated. It follows that these disjunctive variants are only syntactically identical but not otherwise. Within the discourse, they are overtly marked apart by the type of answer(s) that they elicit.

There is one final note of importance which pertains to the scope of the assertion. The scope of the affirmation ornegation is the constituent under focus which can differ, e.g. in (5.4) and (5.7). The whole utterance, in (5.4), is under focus. In (5.7), a narrowing of the scope occurs; the exclusive constituent under focus is that of the adverb.
(5.7) Q. yo?ticà:te? kv thoyó?tvs

Does he work there often?
A. yah teyo?tká: te? thoyó?tvs
not it-is-often he-works-there (No), he doesn't work there often.

The adverb is placed in initial position within the utterance, or to the left of the question particle kv. The constituent under focus does not necessarily correlate on the surface with the element in inftial position-m as seen in (5.8) and (5.9).
(5.8)
Q. kâti kv sahrakha oserunikéha therefore $Q$ you-speak-it in-French Therefore, do you speak French?
A. yah thé tekahrukha
.not thing I-speak-it
(No), I don't speak it.
(5.9) Q. táhnu kv wesakv́:nore
and $Q$ it-rained-on-you
And did it rain on you?
A. yah teyokvnorúne
not it-rained
(No), it didn't rain.

In both (5.8) and (5.9), the entire utterance is under focus. Consequently, the truth value of the whole proposition is to be affirmed or negated.

The scqpe of affirmation or negation is that of the entire proposition.
5.2.1.2 ' X or $\mathrm{X}^{\prime}$ Questions. In the semantic representation, ' $U$ ' of a choice question takes on the following form: (5.1.10)

as in utterance (5.11):

| (5.11) Q. róta?s kv kátu kv royé:ru |  |
| ---: | :--- |
| he-sleeps $Q$ or $Q$ he-is-awake |  |
|  | Is he sleeping or t's he awake? |

A. hv, níiwa róta?s
yes, now he-sleeps
Yes, he is sleeping now.

There is definitely a choice involved. The speaker pretends that there are a number of alternative propositions, of which one or more are true. If the addressee answers with 'no' in Mohawk, he pretends that one or all propositions are false and that he knows an alternative one, which he would then add. If not added, the questioner will agk for it, since his negation implies some withheld knowledge.

### 5.2.2 WH Questions. The WH morphemes (phrases) and

 their morphological composition have been discussed at length in Chapter Three. In this section, we shall discuss WH questiqns and their discourse meaning in relation to their syntaccic form.WH questions in Mohawk differ from disjunctive ones, both syntactically and semantically, in at least two ways:
(i) A simple WH question is signalied by a WH element that focusses , interrogatively on a particular argument. An acceptable answer to a WH, question is an utterance that specifies the argument under question. However, a disjunctive question is'signalled by kátu 'or' and/or ky 'question particle' that focus interrogation on the whole or part of the proposition (see preceding section). An acceptable answer asserts or negates the propositional element(s) under question.
(11) The questioned element(s) under focus: (a) in a simple WH question is always moved into, utterance-initial position; and (b) in a complex WH question are always moved into proposition-initial positions.

In a disjunctive question with only part of its proposition under focus, the focussed element is often but not always in utterance-initial position. However, WH and disjunctive questions have one thing in comon:
they have the same performative reading which indicates the act of inquiring: 'I ask you to tell me'.

Let us now consider the syntactico-semantic aspects of $W H$ ques-
tions. We propose that a WH question $1 s$ formed by two distinct processes:
(1) focus assignment (Chang (1972)) to the indefinite NP wich yields the WH morpheme; ${ }^{1}$
(11) WH-movement (Baker (1970) and Bresnan (1970)) of the WH morpheme leftwards, info utterance-initial position.
These processes shall be respectively illustrated informally as follows:
(a) SOME X
[FOCUS]
(X is a subclass of nouns: THING, PERSON, REASON, TIME, PLACE, etc.) e.g. as in ok nahó:tv? $=\Rightarrow$ oh nahó:tv?
'some thing' $==>$ 'what thing'/'what'


The WH question can thus be formulated as (5.12).


Condition: 3 contains [ FOGUS ] (WH morpheme).

Notice that the indefinite noun phrase (il) (a) is moved to the left into the first position within the ' $U$ ' utterance (ii) (b).

We have previously referred to wh morphemes globally as indefinite noun phrases. Some linguists have clàssified WH morphemes into definite and indefinite types. Katz \& Postal (1964) base such a claim on syntactic grounds. They suggest, for example, that 'which one' cannot co-occur with 'else', whereas 'who' can. From a semantic point of view, 'which one', refers to a definite get of possible alternatives. Within this set the choice, however, is indefinite. We might, therefore, agree with Grosu (1975: 473) that 'which one' and 'who' both share the domain of indefiniteness, even though the domain of the former is more restricted than that of the latter. Katz \& Postal further propose that all interrogative phrases such as 'which one, 'which place' are definite noun phrases, while.single interrogative words are indefinite. They base their claim on distributional facts as seen above. This claim, if applied to Mohawk, is not viable; for example, ka? nu:wa 'which place' stands for an indefinite locative, irregardléss of its morphological composition. Consequently, we argue that question-answer formations have to be
treated semantically rather than syntactically, if we want to understand their intrinsic purposes.

Any WH question requests identification of an indefinite and unknown entity. If this is not so, then they will not qualify as situationally unmarked interrogatives. We thus propose that all WH morphemes share the same domain: that of indefiniteness. For some, however, this domain is more restricted ${ }^{2}$ than for others.

WH morphemes take on two functions within a syntactico-semantic perspective: they fill pronominal and adverbial positions. Members of each of the two subcategories are firat listed below, and then exemplified respectively in (5.13) and (5.14).
(1) The pronominal subcategory contains:
úhka? 'who'
oh nahó:tv? 'what'
ka? niká:yv? 'which one'
(i1) The adverbial subcategory comprises:

ká?tke 'when'
to
'how'
ka? nú:we
'which place'
oh nutyé:rv
'why'
(For a complete 11st, see Chapter Three.)
nahb:tv? akata:ti
PRT-?-1s-(a)-thing I-should-say-it
What should I say?
ka? nikahá:wi vkawatá:ko which PRT-it-is-carrying she-will-fix-it When will she fix it?

The semantic representation of (5.13), ignoring minor details, results in (5.15):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[U^{X}-\left[{ }_{v}^{S A Y}\right]-X-\left[{ }_{\text {WR }} \text { SOME THING }+ \text { FOCUS }\right]\right] \tag{5.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the focal $N P$ fills the object position. The semantic representation of (5.14) results in (5.16):

where the aiverbial constituent is analyzed as a two-place predicate: $t_{i}$ representing the indefinite temporal $N P$, and ' $\mathrm{Ar'}$ ' the temporal predicate.

The wh question, now treated from a presuppositional point of view, will result in (5.17) if we take (5.13) as an example:
(5.17) PRSP [ SHOULD [ SAY I. $\Delta$ ]] [ SHOULD [ SAY I [ s $\overline{O M E}$ THING + FOCUS $]$ ]]

The focussed constituent within the assertion contains a primary focus stress '- that triggers off morphophonemic transformations of the element under stress. Once the transformation is complered, the stress is then deleted:
$[\overline{\mathrm{OK}}$ NAHÓ:TV? + FOCUS $] \Rightarrow$ [ OH NAHÓ:TV? + FOCUS ] Condition: OH contains WH segment.

At a later stage the question phrase will be moved to the uppermost left of the utterance and the feature [ ${ }^{\circ}+$ FOCUS $]$ will be deleted.

In cases where the question is introduced by a WH morpheme rather than by a WH phrase, the former will be marked by the primary
focus stress on the element that precedes the indefinite pronoun marker. - k , as in (5.19):
$[$ ÜKKAK + FOCUS $] \Rightarrow$ [ ÜKA? + FOCUS $] \leadsto$ Condition: ÚUKA? contains WH segment.

The primary focus stress in (5.19) triggers off the morphological transformation. As illustrated in (ii) (b) the WH morpheme is later on moved leftward to form a surface structure as, for example, in (5.20):
(5.20) úhka? kuwatá:ko
who she-fixes-it
Who is fixing it?
(5.20) represented within a presuppositional viewpoint results in (5.21):


Notice that the primary stress is placed on the second element of the focussed NP within the assertion.
5.2.3 Complex Questions. We cannat completely omit complex question constructions since they represent a minor part of our collected data. Interestingly enough, most of these we have found within school conversations. A typical example is shown 堛 (5.22):
Q. uhka? roteryf:tare naho:tv? kill
who he-knows-it PRI-?-is-(a)-thing this-one it-is-in
Who knows what fs in it (the picture)?
A. o?nv́hare
grape
A grape.

Example (5.22) shows that there may be some hierarchy among presuppositions. ( 5.22 ) presupposes that something is in the picture and, based on this presupposition, it further presupposes that someone knows what it is. The latter̀ presupposition presupposes the former, as illustrated in (5.23): (5.23) PRSP [BE IN $\left.\triangle \operatorname{IT} T^{\circ}\right] \quad[\operatorname{PRSP} \quad[$ KNOW $\triangle \operatorname{IT}[\mathrm{BE}$ IN SOME THING IT ]] , [ [ ravo [] some one + focus ] it [ be dn [ some thing + focus ] .IT 1]]

Notice that focus specification applies to both of the indefinite entities. The operator [ + FOCUS ] thus identifies the constituents that will be transformed intó WH morphemes,

In everyday cońversations, we have found other types of embedded questions, as in. (5.24):
(5.24) Q, uhka? tyakotyer̂hto, 1:se? kátu tsohké:ri
who she-was-first, you or Tsohkeri Who was first, you or Tsohkeri?
(5.24) A. hv, tsohké:ri né?e
yes, Tsohkeri CLFT It was Tsohkeri.

The question in (5.24) presupposes that someone was firat, and based upon this presupposition, it follows that it was either 'you' or 'Tsohkerf'. We tentatively-represent (5.24) as in (5.25): (5.25) PRSP [ BE FIRST $\Delta$ ] [ BE FIRST SOME ONE + FOCUS [ OR ['ASSERT [ YOU + FOCUS ]]] [ASSERT [ Tsohkeri + FOCUS ]]]

The answer has to assert the type of choice under focus: 'you' or 'Tsohkeri' that was first.

We are giving these two examples to show that a semantic presuppositional approach is apt to capture some of the particularities of complex questions.
5.3 Marked Question Types. We have shown above that questions contrast among themselves on semantic and structural bases. Below we shall sketch question types that contrast from those above on the bases of their atructure and of their usages. We shall refer to them as marked question types and discuas them briefly under the following headings:
(1) Indirect questions
(i1)
(i1i) Conditional questions
(1v) Echo questions
(v) Quiz questions
(5) (vi) Rhetorical questions
(vil) Queclarative questions
(vili) Whimperative questions
(1x) Tag questions
5.3.1 Indirect Questions. Indirect questions. differ. from direct embedded questions such as (5,23)--see complex questions under 5.2.3-with respect to their dominance. The former questions are semantically subordinate, whereas the latter are semantically dominant within the utterance.

We shall illustrate indirect questions with a few examples found in Mohawk conversations:
(5.26) yah tewakateryf:tare oh nátyere
not I-know-it WH PRT-I-should-do I don't know what I ahould do.
(5.27) tsohké:r1 wa?kroryanyuskwe to na?teyaoserlyá:ku Tsohker1 she-told-sie-1t how PRT-she-is-old Tsohkeri was telling me how old she was. \#

The subordinate question functions as a sentential argument of the preceditg predicate, filling the rôle of an object or a subject. In each above example, the question is a sentential object referred to in the first predicate by a non-human referent. (5.26) will be informally represented, minus certain details, as in (5.28) if we consider
it an inherent part of the speech act situation within the discourse.


The illocutionary force is that of saying. The interrogative pro-form within the $U_{2}$ is signalled by [ FOCUS ] and focal stress.

We shall now generalize the above indirect WH questions (5.26) and (5.27) without performative, however, as follows in (5.29):


Condition: 3 contains [ FOCUS ].
$\mathrm{U}_{2}$ is dominated by a semantic class of verbs called by Chang (1972: 165)
'information verbs'. The underlytag illocutionary force as exhibitad in (5.28) is that of telling. No answer is expected. The indirect question Is thus indicated by:
(1) the absence of the act of inquiring;
(ii) an information verb dominating the indirect question.

In (5.26) the embedded question is derived as previously described in 5.2.2. In (5.27) the subordinate construction $1 s$ derived by similar derivational rules.

This question type has been excluded from our data since it does not request any answer.
5.3.2 Quoted Questions. In indirect discourse, the embedded question is understood from the point of view of the speaker. In direct discourse utterances, each embedded question is interpreted from the point of view of the subject (referred to in the second noun phrase) of the imediately dominating utterance:
(5.30)
kór wahf:ru saro ki?
Paul he-said-it Charles definitely this-one
Paul said to Charles
tehotithare wahari?wanu:tu ka? ne:?e ne sak
they-talked-together he-agked-it where CLFT NOM Jack
as they were talking togethex, he asked him: 'Where fs Jack?';

```
wahá:ru khé:re kv rosotkéha yehviteru
    he-said-it maybe DUB at-his-grandfather he-stays-there
    he sald: 'Maybe at his grandfather's he 1s staying'.
    wahá:ru to nahskärya?ke
    he-said-it how (much) PRI-you-paid
    He said: 'How much did you pay?';
    wak1:ru ähsv nikahwistake
    I-aaid-1t three PRT-'dollar' *
    I sald: 'Three dollars'.
```

These reported question-answer pairs structurally represent quotations within quotations. The semantic structure underlying (5.30) may be illustrated as follows, omitting any minor details, in (5.32).

Notice the type of overt performative used in both examples initiating the quote to follow: in (5.30) 'SAY' is later specified by the more restricted verb 'ASK'; in (5.31) the verb 'SAY' alone introduces the quoted question. It appears that in Mohawk, the act of asking is a subclass of the act of saying. Subsequently, a question can be introduced by either of the two predicatesy


Two quoted utterances (U'g) occur: ' $U_{1}$ ' immediately dominated by a NP in the D -frame and ' $\mathrm{U}_{2}$ ' commanded by a verb of telling. These embedded hypersentences thus make possible the analyses of direct discourse.

At a later stage in the derivation of (5.30), the performative is deleted in the topmost discourse utterance $\left(U_{D}\right)$, and $U$ immediately dominating $U_{2}$. Notice the axguments $X_{5}$ and $X_{9}$ in ' $U_{1}$ ' of the question are identified only once, when first referred to, as Paul and Charles.

Within a lower tree, $X_{5}$ alone is retained and realized on the surface as a pronominal enclitic of 'ASK'. In the quoted answer, $X_{9}$ dominated by
' $U_{1}$ ' alone is retained and realized on the surface as a pronominal enclitic of 'SAY', as shown in (5.33):
(5.33) Quoted Answer


From a structural point of view, the direct question, as well as the indirect question, function as sentential arguments referred to by the neuter pronoun in the preceding predicate. They both are embedded constructions. Their main differences lie in semantic realms: (1) within the referential interpretation as mentioned above; (ii) within the discourse situation-a direct question is dominated bỳ the performative of inquiring or saying, therefore, it usualiy is followed by an answer;
(1ii) within the act of performing-a quote ${ }^{3}$ is acted out, but not so an indirect question. The speaker herewith assumes the rôle of another party. This holds true for a quoted question and á quoted answer also.

We shall no longer refer to this question type in this study.
5.3.3 Conditional questions. The conditional question in Mohawk is introduced by an if-clause. This clause states a certain hypothetical situation, presupposed by the following question. In other words, a conditional question is an embedded construction where the questioned element is requested only under conditions specified by the subordinate if-clause.
(5.34) Q. tóka vshatya?tara:ko ne yainiha
if he-himbelf-will-leave NOM your-father
If your father is going to leave
uhka? kati o:nv tvaháta?ne
who then now he-stands-up-agekn
who will then take his place?
A. tó:ka
'I-don't-know'
I don't know.
(5.35)
Q. ake?nisttha to káti uhte nautahyakoyb: take
my-mother how then I-wonder NOM-she-would-be-old How old would my mother be
nayakúuheke?
NoM-she-sould-be-alive
if she were alive?
A. shaté:ku niwahshy
eight PRT-ten
Eighty.

We shall tentatively represent the conditional question as follows:


The NP under question in $U_{2}$ contains focus. At some atage within the derivation the performative will be deleted as well as the predicate 'THEN' dominating $\mathrm{U}_{2}$.

The conditional question differs from the unmarked ones:
(1) on the performative level--the speaker assumes ' $U_{1}$ ' to be a conditional statement to the following question ' $U_{2}$ ';
(ii) with respect to discourse presuppositions, the conditional serves as a warning to the 11 istener not to assume that the speaker believes the antecedent to be true. The antecedent for Karttumen (1971) is always presupposed to be false, and for Lakoff (1970b) both the antecedent (if-clause) and the consequent are presupposed to be false. Bates (1974), however,
suggests that the antecedent is not necessarily false but suspended. Such definition includes false as well as unknown antecedents. We opt for this 1atter position.

The if-clause thus becomes the fellcity condition of the calledfor responge. Logically, we can postulate that a conditional question contains two utterances: 'if $\mathrm{U}_{1}$, then $\mathrm{U}_{2}$ '. The $\mathrm{U}_{2}$ has to match up with what is conveyed by $U_{1}$ in order to turn into a viable question.

Unfortunately, we know very little about either the syntactic or the semantic nature of conditional questions. There have been some remote references made by Lakoff (1974). Still, we would like to know more, for instance, about the semantic scope of if-clauses, the relation between presuppositions and the assertion, etc.
5.3.4 Echo Questions. The echo question is an utterance that is used in situations where the speaker intends to make sure of or express surprise at what he has heard. He thus echoes part or the whole of the preceding utterance spoken to him. A unique, emphatically-stressed, rising intonation marks the final stressed vowel of the echo question, setting it apart from ordinary questions. It follows that such a question is only used if the referent of the NP is known by the speaker. Confirmation of the truth value, and further repetition (5.38), and specification of the questioned constituents are thus requested (5.37). Interesa. tingly enough in my corpus, we found only yes-no echo questions and no wh ones.
(5.37) St. o:nv tho natá?saweh
now there they-started
Now they have started.
EQ. o:nv kv
now Q
Now?
A. hv
yes
Yes.
(5.38) Q. thó ne kv ná:?a thí:kv wisk yawf:re

- then NOM $Q$ maybe that-one five ten .
Wasn't it then 15 dollars.
nikahwistake wahanáato , wisk y'awi:re, wasako?tyerí?kwa PRT-'dollar' he-charged-ft, five ten he-would-take-them that he charged--fifteen to take them there?

EQ, wisk yawi:re (kv)
five ten (Q)
Fifteen?
A. wisk yawfire sakiho táhnu yakwateno?sohokína thi:kv five ten Sakiho and our-other-siblings that-one Fifteen (dollars) for Sakiho and our other siblings.

As proposed by Sadock (1969) and Chang. (1972), an echo question can be informally expressed as: 'I ask you to tell me whether you told/requested me that'U'? The underlying discourse structure of an echo ques-
tion might be represenfed as follows:



The superhypersentence (5.39) as called by Sadock (1969) is capturing the process of indirectivisation.

As in the direct question, $\mathrm{U}_{2}$ 'is a quote. The quote, however, is a repeated one: 'Did you say $U_{2}$ ?'. Therefore, $U_{2}$ itgelf is not placed between quotation marks. The repeated or indirect quote signals a difference of intention: an answer is expected from the addrassee that will clarify the constituent under question. This is not so in a direct quote. in (5.38) further specification of a constituent is expected, whereas in ( 5.37 ) the truth value of a stated constituent is to be reasserted or confirmed.

The underlying superhypersentence, is entirely deleted with the exception of the lowest $U$ where the focus assignment via katu ky placement will transform the utterance into an echo question.

### 5.3.5 Quiz Questions. With only one exception, I have

 found all the marked question types'1isted in 5.3 in everyday Mohawk conversation from Kanesatake. The one exception is that of quiz questions. I have found this particular type in testing situations only, i.e. in school conversations between teacher and students in St. Regis. (5.41) and (5.42) shall illustrate such speech events.(5.41)

Teacher:

> Q. ok ne kv nukwa:ti
> and NOM here, PRT-this-side
> and on this side (1s who)?

## Student:

## $A_{1}$ raktsi:?a

my-older-brother
My older brother.

Teacher:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { C. } & \text { yah, kív nira:?a } & \text { ne:?e } \\
: & \text { no this-here 'PRT-he-fs-small CLFT } \\
\text {. No, it is this small (boy) here. }
\end{array}
$$

$$
\mathbf{A}_{2}
$$

r1
he-(to)-me
My

[^3](5.41)

Student:
$\mathrm{A}_{3}$. ri?kt:?a
my-younger-brother
My younger brother.

Teacher:
Ap.* ricky: fa
my-younger-brother
My younger brother.
$(5,42)$
Teacher:
$\therefore$ Q. sa?nistína ya?niha táhnu unka your-mother your-father and who (There is) your mother, your father and who?

## Student:

A. aktai:?a
my-older-sister
My older sister.

## (5.43)

Student:
mi. St. . takó: s otsitv́:?a
cat bird
'(There is a) cat (and a) bird.

Teacher: (The teacher is pointing at the cat in the picture.) Q. takọ:s táhnu otsitv̊:? ? cat and bird $\therefore$ then (WH) PRT-he-is-doing that-one The cat and the bird, so what is he (the cat) doing?
*Ap stathds for approval.
(5.43)

Student:

$$
A_{1} \text {. (silence) }
$$

Teacher:
m Rq.* tsi:ru 1:rehre? ahoye:na? ne otsitf:?a you-say-it he-wants he-would-catch-it NOM bird Say: 'He wants to catch the bird'.

## Student:

$A_{2}$ i:rehre? ahoyéna? $\quad$ notsitif:?a
he-wants he-would-catch-it NOM-bird
He wants to catch the bird.

What are the made that attribute a quiz meaning to (5.41), (5.42), and (5.43)? Let us examine them on two levels: the syntactic (surface) first and then the semantic one.

On the surface in (5.42) and (5.43) the questioned elements,
respectively the two proforms thka? 'who' and oh 'what', have obviously undergone WH pro-formation. The WH-movement to utterance-initial position, though, has been applied in neither of the two cases. otherwise, the question in (5.42) would read as (5.44):
(5.44) "Who is there besides your father and your mother?

Likewise, (5.43 Q) would read as (5.45):
(5.45) What is he doing, the cat? if

[^4]A first observation can be stated: questioned constituents in quiz questions occur in their respective (declarative) NP position, usually utterance non-initial. As for the question in (5.41), however, the requested noun phrase has been completely deleted.

We now have to modify the above observation: questioned constituents in quiz questions, if not deleted, occur as pro-forms in their respective deefiarative NP positions.

Notice, however, the partially deleted form in (5.41) of the requested noun. In other words, the teacher is providing her student with a partial answer. This leads us into a third observation. Unlike most question situations, the information is known already by the questloner, the teacher. In the abaence of an answer, the teacher will provide the student with a partial one as in (5.41 $\mathbf{A}_{2}$ ); or a complete one as in ( 5.43 Rq ). In the latter, the answer is overtly marked by the performative 'SAY' which invites the student in turn to repeat the answer given by the teacher. 4

We now enter the domain of semantics. In all the three above questions, the underlying performative 'REQUEST' has been deleted. In other instances, however, 'TELL'/'SAY' was retained as an overt performative and this not only in an answer ( 5.43 kq ), but also in questions we have observed. The function of such overt performatives is to reenforce or specify the expected action that the teacher requests from her student. Indirectiy, the teacher thus stresses her authority position. If a student would demonstrate to his/her teacher, in a like manner, the type of performance expected, it would be considered as inap-
propriate. The privileged authority position of the teacher is signalled also by the fact that answers are evaluated immediately as false or correct ones.

In (5.41), the teacher shows approval by repeating the answer. In Mohawk, repetitions of this nature are not uncomnon. What is rather unusual, however, is that the pronoun of the repeated noun phrase is in the first person rather than in the second person. In an ordinary conversation, (5.41 Ap) would have taken on the following form as in (5.46): (5.46) Your younger brother.

Rather than confirming the given information-which would have been the case if (5.46) was uttered- (5.41 Ap) implies that the teacher is appro-. ving the given proper form: therefore, her identical repetition. Confirming a given answer implies accepting it. In a usual answer-question exchange, a given answer is accepted on the basis that the apeaker is believed to be as sincere as the one who has asked the question. In a quiz situation, the tester will evaluate an answer on the basis of his own knowledge of what the right answer should be. The student's sincerity in answering becomes thus irrelevant. As we have seen in the above answers, a teacher might then reject and correct ( 5.41 C ), teach ( 5.43 Rq ), or finally approve ( 5.41 Ap ) the responses given by her students.

How can we capture all these and many more properties not mentioned here in a comprehensive, semantic representation? Peripheral attempta have been made by such linguista as Kuno \& Robinson (1972), Sadock (1974), Cole (1974), and Hundsnurscher (1975). 'Still, we know very 1ittie
about the diverse, syntactico-semantic aspects of quiz question. Sadock has refused to commit, himself on the logical properties of this question type 'because little is known' about them (p. 123). Yet we shall endeavour a preliminary confecture on some discourse aspects of quiz questions, as in (5.47).


Condition: WH-movement is filtered in ' $U$ '.
n
In the process of derivation in $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{1}}$, the verb 'REQUEST' is always deleted, and 'TELL' ${ }_{6}$ 'SAY' sometimes. ' $U$ ' is retained in $U_{D_{1}}$. $U_{D_{2}}$ is completely deleted. We can thus paraphrase (5.47) as (5.48):

I request you to tell me 'U'--I know' 'U'.

D has two subtrees: $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{1}}$ and $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{2}} \cdot \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{1}}$ represents the question type, and $U_{D_{2}}$ the assertion of the anawer known by the questioner.

We hope that this limited attempt to handle quiz questions will stimulate others to further inquire, into this relatively unknown domain.

### 5.3.6 Rhetorical Questions. Rhetorical questions do

 not expect any answers. Unlike the preceding questions, nothing in their structural compoisition will mark them as definitely rhetorical. Thus again, only the discourse context will permit the addressee to recognize a question as rhetorical. For example, a speaker who leaves no time for an answer might thus signal his question to be rhetorical in nature. He further implies that the answer is not only obvious to him but also to the addressee. 7 Therefore, its verbalization becomes unnecessary. Semantically, this suggests that the presupposition(s) underlying a rhetoAcal question is (are) shared by both the speaker and the addressee.Note the following example in Mohawk:

## Speaker 1:

Q $1^{\text {. Káti na? nyytbáa:wv?ne }}$
then maybe PRT-it-will-happen
Then what will happen?
Q ${ }_{2}$ nyvtsá:wvine oh níyot yah teyakonu:tv?s

PRT-it-will-happen WH PRT-it-is-like not she-feeds-milk What will happen if she does not feed milk
onú: ta? ne akoya?okú:?v?s
fullk NOM her-children
to her children?

## (5.49)

Speaker 2:
A. hv
yes
Yев.

In (5.49) the implicit answer to the second question ( $Q_{2}$ ) is explicitiy acknowledged and asserted by Speaker . $^{\text {. Herewith, he confirms implicitly }}$ that he shares the same knowledge with Speaker ${ }_{1}$ : 'the answer to $Q_{1}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ is obvious'. We shall postulate the following structure for (5.49 $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ ):

(5.50) may be paraphrased as: 'I tell you what will happen-I know you
know what will happen'.
The tree has two subtrees. The first one has the structure of an indirect quoted question whereas the second asserts the answer to it. Its form is also that of an indirect question. In the process of derivation, both subtrees are deleted with the exception of the lowest $U$ within the first subtree.

We do not pretend to have covered all the possible types of rhetorical questions, nor all their structural complexities. ${ }^{8}$ Our intent was solely to confirm ita existence in Mohawk and how it might be used in some instances.

D
5.3.7 Queclarative Questions. The rhetorical question is closely related to the queclarative one. Both question types implicitly assert the underlying proposition. The difference liea within the intention of the speakers: whether the speaker is telling about the proposition in the form of a question, or whether he is asking for information and confirmation by asserting the underlying proposition. The latter is the queclarative type. The speaker asserts and thereby confims the opposite polarity from that which he is apparently asking.

## (5.51)

Speaker 1:
$Q_{1}$ thé $k v$ serhó:roks ne sanu:tsi
anything $Q$ you-cover-1t NOM your-head (motor)
Do you cover the motor with anything?

Speaker 2:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{1} \cdot \text { yah (laughs) } \\
& \text { no } \\
& \text { No. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## (5.51)

Speaker 1:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
Q_{2} & \text { tsi } & \text { niwashu:tes } \\
& \text { during } & \text { PRT-night } \\
& \text { During the night? }
\end{array}
$$

Speaker 2:
$A_{2}$. yah
no
No.

Speaker 1:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { R. ah ne ki húni } \\
& \text { ah NOM this-one '1t-caused-it' } \\
& \therefore \text { Ah, that's the cause (of your troubles). }
\end{aligned}
$$

## (5.52)

Speaker 1:
$Q_{1} \cdot{ }^{9}$ tsi kanátayv? nu:we nusayakwe
that town-on-ground PRT-place PRT-we-were-going-there
There on Indian land we were going
thi tyiyutaka:rute wáhi nú that-one 'hole-in-the-pail' TAG there to the hole in the pail, you know?

## Speaker 2:

$Q_{2}$. yah ky ne té:ky", thi tyoshuwakáa: rute not $Q$ NOM the-one that-one 'hole-in-the-ground' Isn't that place called 'hole in the ground'?
${ }^{*} R_{\text {stands }}$ for response.
\#te- in té:kv is a negative prefix.
(5.52)

Speaker 2:
$Q_{2}$. ratina?tifkwa
they-call-1t
(correction of place name)

Speaker 1:
A. hv
yes
Yев.
$(5,53)$
$\begin{array}{llll}\text { Q. káti nutyé:ry } & \text { tei wáóryo } & \text { nihukstína } \\ \text { then PRT-1t-18-(a)-matter } & \text { that } & \text { he-beat-him } & \text { PRT-he-is-old }\end{array}$ Then why did he beat him--he is old?
A. ne kwí káa:tu

NOM definitely I-say
That's what I say.

The $Q_{2}$ in (5.51), a positive yes-no question, has definitely an inherent negative bias, whereas the bias in ( $5.52 \mathrm{Q}_{2}$ ), a negative yesno question, is definitely a positive bne. (See Pope (1975) on biased yes-no questions,) In either case, the polarity requasted is not marked overtiy within the uttered question. The diacourse context--in both instances that of the preceding utterance(s) and the following one--umambiguously mariks the questions emantically as queclarative types.

The underlying meaning of (5.51 $Q_{2}$ ), for instance, may be paraphrased as follows in (5.54):
(5.54)

> I request that you tell we whether during the night you cover your (skidoo) motox (or not)-I know that during the night you do not cover it.
(5.54) can be represented as in (5.55):


We postulate in agreement with Sadock (1970, 1.974) that queclaratives are derived from two underlying discourse utterances, as in (5.55). They are represented in the form of two subtrees within the discourse frame, $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{1}}$ and $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{2}}$. $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{1}}$ represents, the act of inquiring, and $U_{D_{2}}$ the assertion of the opposite polarity of the proposition under question. In the process of derivation, $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{2}}$ is completely deleted, while in
$\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{1}}$ only, the performative 1s. The lowest ' U ', the interrogative utterance within $U_{D_{1}}$ is retained on the surface. The speaker does not imply that the addressee shares the knowledge (assertion) as in the rhetorical question. This fact is especially evident in (5.52 $Q_{2}$ ). There is an element of doubt within the speaker's words. Therefore, he requests an answer. We have a series of 'why' questions (cf. (5.53)), in my data which suggest the opposite polarity of the apparent proposition. In (5.53), the proposition asserted is understood as: There was no reason why he beat.him-he is old. This proposition entails a suggestion: he should not have beaten him because he is old. The addressee in ( 5.53 A ) is affinming the underlying proposition and the entailed suggestion. We would have to modify the discourse frane for these type of queclaratives by attaching (5.57). Where and how is not our present concern.


Yet, how should 'why' queclaratives be represented? While first asserted as $\operatorname{in}$ (5.53), they might then be answered as ordinary 'why' questions. For example, in (5.53), the answerer could, have continued: 'It's because of the alcohol...'. This domain must remain unanswered and unresearched for the time being.

### 5.3.8 Whimperative Questions. Whimperatives are a

 class of questions that carry the illocutionary force of a request and the intent for action. They have been diacussed at length by Gordon \& Lakoff (1971), Green (1972, 1973), Sadock (1974), and Johnson (1975). It Is generally understood that such a question type requests efther a verbal response-whether or not the act is carried out-and/or a non-verbal one. A question that roughly implies by tite act the imposition of the questioner' B will upon the addressee 1 da called by Green (1972) an 'impositive'. They differ from whimperatives also in the type of answer required. Whimperatives do not necessarily ask for a verbal response, whereas impositives usually do. In the former, for example, 'no' in certain circumstancea could be acceptable. Not so in the latter case. A qualifying statement always has to follow 'no'.We shall filustrate the whimperative question type and the impositive respectively, each with one example. We propose that impositive questions are a subclass of whimperatives, realized by both disjunctive and Whi questions. However, the yes-no whimperatives do not seem to ask for the opposite polarity, whereas the 'why' impositives seem to do so, fust as the queclaratives do. Both whimperatives and the impositives
function as requests for action. Yet, they differ at least in respect to their illocutionary force, and the type of response requested. We shall discuss below only the 'why' impositive in Mohawk.

5.3.8.1 Whimperative.
(5.58)
(5.59)
oh nutyé:ry, tai" yah tesatenúikaru
WH PRI-1t-18-(a)-matter that not you-cut-your-haix
Why don't you have your hair cut?
A. to: ka
'I-don't-know'
I don't know..

We can illustrate the underlying representation of (5.59) as follows in (5.60):

only ' $U$ ' in $U_{D_{1}}$ is retained on the surface. We can paraphrase (5.60) as in (5.61):
(5.61) I request you to tell the reason why you do not do 'U'-I know there is no reason why you do not do 'U'.

There is a softened suggestion entailed for (5.59). We have discussed this point already for 'why' queclaratives above.

The 'why' impositive must have the subject 'YOU' as in (5.60) or 'WE', but not go, the queclarative' It is thab the subject referent that differentiates the 'why" impositive from the "why' queclarative.
5.3.9 Tag Questions. In Mohawk, we have distinguished
at least four typea of tag questions--those that:
(i) ask for agreement (confirmation, according to Sadock (1974: 136));
(1i) Inform the addreasee without expecting a verbal response;
(iii) ask of the addressee hia/her fopinion of the truth assumed by the apeaker;
(iv) ask for agreement and/or specification of a negative proposition. We shall illustrate respectively the four tag question types below, and then briefly examine each one in turn.
(5.62) Q. ronatewiraralkwv wi thi they-kept-baby TAG that-one
They adopted the baby, didn't they?

> A. hv, ronatewirara?kiv thi yea, they-kept-baby, that-one Yes, they adopted him.
Q. rauwatf?a ki? wáhi
hismephew definitely TAG
It's his nephew, isn't it?
(5.64) Q. yako?nistú?shv whf she-still-has-mother fag
She still has her mother, has she?
A. khére kv by yako?nistff?shv maybe $A D U B$ yes she-still-has-mother Yes, maybe she still has her mother--

1:nu kiné?e niyó:re tyé:teru far quite PRT-it-is-far she-ifves she is living quite far away.
(5.65) $Q_{1}$. yah kv teyurohkawi:nes not $Q$ she-goes-fishing She ionic going fishing, is she?
${ }^{4} A_{1}$. yah
ne
No.
$Q_{2}$. yah lev
no Q
No, eh?
$A_{2}$. yah, yowisto ne nowisáike
no, it-is-cold NOM NOM-on-ice
No, it is too cold on the ice.

Notice the invariable tag form wahi ${ }^{10}$ for all the four questiona. The same tag can be attached or inserted into any declarative-form utterance. (5.62) to (5.64) are declarative utterances that have a tag attached. We ohare the opinion of Lakoff (1974) who suggests 'that tag questions are really reduced forms of real questions' (p. 339). Lakoff further suggests that they are always amalgamated onto the end of sentences.

In Mohawk, tago usually are clause final, but not always as seen in (5.62). We shall not further discuss such syntactic problems. The semantic function of tags in Mohawk is:
(1) to attribute the illocutionary force of a question reading to the proposiction;
to blas (a) a poaitive declarative statement toward an obligatory positive answer, or
(b) a negative declarative statement toward an obligatory negative anowex.

The four tag types differ among themselives, however, with reapect to their. illocutionary force, as we ohall show below. There are also some structural differences in thus amalgamating (5.62) to (5.64) into one group where the tag is overt, and (5.65) into another groap, where the tag is implicit. We shall now diecuss eạch tag indiviéyally.
5.3.9.1 Tag question (5.62): Agreement Requested. Tentatively, we shall represent (5.62) as follows:


4
Sadock (1974) auggests that the hearer and the speaker share the same opinion. Consequently, he postulates the performative 'REMIND' in $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{1}}$. 'TELL' is used in place of 'RRMIND' by us because if introduces a decla-
rative. We claim that shared opinion is implied in the underlying stricture of the tag $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{2}}$ in the verb 'AGREE'. We further assume, in agreement with Chang (1972), that this tag question is dominated by three D-utcerances. The first D-sentence corresponds to the declarative sentence in (5.62): the second and the thdx correspond largely to the D-structure of the queclarative. The force of assertion is doubled by asserting the proposition twice: once in $U_{D_{1}}$ and once in $U_{D_{3}}$. At some stage in the derivation, the tag particle is derived from the performative in the second D-utterance. The remaining aubtrees in this D-utterance, as well as the entire third D-utterance, are deleted. The representation seems to be plausible, though primarily on semantic grounds.

5.3.9.2 Tag Question (5.63): Information Given. In
5.3.9.1, we have assumed that both the speaker and the addressee know something about the proposition. In (5.63), this assumption does not necessarily hold true. The speaker is informing the addressee who might or might not know the proposition. In any case, the speaker does not expect an anøwer. Hudson (1975) observed similar use of the tag question among the working class in London, England.

What distinguishes this type of utterance from an ordinary declarative'statement? We believe that' there are at least two semantic differences. In the tag question 'information given', the speaker: (1) re-enforces the truth value of the froposition to himgelf as well as to the addressee;
(11) further indicates the addreseee-directiveness of his atatement by marking it as a question-ma question usually involves a
speaker and addressee.
We shall represent (5.63) as follows in (5.68):


As in (5.66), on the surface only ' $U$ ' of $U_{D_{1}}$ in (5.68) is racained as a statement and the perfarmative of $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{2}}$ as a transformed tag. (5.68) might be paraphrased as in (5.69):
I te11 you 'U'--I ask' you to accept 'U'--I know 'U':

In tag quéstion (5.62), the proposition is definitely assertive. In (5.68) the assertive force of the proposition is even stronger. Therefore, the embedded performative 'you tell me' is absent. A verbal anower is neither necessary nor desired from the point of view of the speaker. We do not
pretend that $(5.68)$ covers all structural complexities ${ }^{11}$ such as, for example, the performative reading of the tag in $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{D}_{2}}$. Its force is that of a request. Yet in the absence of the information, verb 'TELL', we have opted for 'ASK' rather than 'REQUEST'. Thus the reading of a request (command) otherwise remains unambiguousliy that of a question.

### 5.3.9.3 Tag Question (5.64): Opinion Requested. In

question type 5.3 .9 .1 , it is assumed that both speaker and hearer share some knowledge about the proposition. In tag question 5.3.9.3, it is assumed by the speaker that the addressee is more informed about the proposition than himself; therefore, unlike in 5.3.9.1, the intonation on the tag is rising. The speaker thus requests from the addressee his opinion on the assumed proposition. A simple affirmative answer with the same rising intonation pattern is sufficient. In (5.64 A), the opinfon of the answerer is further qualified by a declarative statement. Thus approval on the part of the answerer might be expressed by a simple 'yes', or else py a qualifying statement. It appaars that this tag is closely related to the tag 5.3.9.1.

We shall represent tag 'opinion requested' semantically, as In (5.70). The same deletions occur as in the preceding two tag questions. Only ' $U$ ' in $U_{D}$ and the performative in $U_{D_{2}}$ are retained on the surface, after transformations have been applied to the latter.


We can paraphrase (5.70) as (5.71):
(5.71) " I tell you 'U'--I ask you to tell me that you approve 'U'I suppose 'U'.
$\therefore$. Notice the semantic difference among tag 'agreement requested' In (5.66), tag 'information given' in (5.68), and tag 'opinion requested' in (5.70), with respect to the modality expressed. In (5.66) and (5.68),
the proposition ia definitely known to be true by the speaker; in (5.70) this is not the casc. The tag in (5.66) asks for agreement; in (5.68) for acceptancc; and $\ln (5.70)$ for approval. The deciarative utterances In (5.66) and (5.68) are simple statements.

### 5.3.9.4 Tag Question (5.65): ExpLanation and/or Agree-

ment Requested. The preceding tag questions all share one overt mark: that of the tag. We now claim that there is another queetion type that has no overt eag. It is the question incroduced by gah kv 'no' + 'question particle'. We first wondered whether Pope's suggeation (1975) for negative conjuncts might be applica to Mohaw . She proposes that there are two diofunctive question types, the one we described as ' $X$ or not- $X$ ', and another one 'not-X or $X$ '. A negative yea-no question in Mohawk thus would be derived from the later disfunct. In Englioh, such a formulation is possible, becauac both the ' $X$ or not-X' and the 'not-X or $X$ ' questions can be answered by 'yes' or 'no'. Even di the negative diajunctive question is blased tovard a negative answer, this is not an obligatory condition.

In Mohawk, however, a negative diajunctive queation definitely requeats a negative anower. In other words, a Mohawk speaker is uttering a negative yeamo question only if he preauppoaes the negative bias of the propoaition. The quegtioning takes on the function of a request for agreement Erom the addrcogee, plus some further explanation (approval) about the negative agpect of the proposition. The speaker realiy wants to have gome further explanation. He, nonethelesa, wil content himeelf with an answer that shows agrement if the addressee, for some reason, is not ca-
pable of conveying the desired explanation. If he feels that the addreasee could convey some explanation, he will further question him, as in ( $5.65 \mathrm{Q}_{2}$ ).

In a positive statement, the added rag aske for a positive answer; likevise, in a negative question the answer requested is negative. We thus propose that the underiying representation of yah kv questiont ls that of a tag question, where the negative propobition io known by both speaker and addressee. (5.65) can tentatively'be represented by (5.72):

TELL a
b


On the aurface, unlike the preytous tag questions 5.3.9.1, 2 , and 3 , here ' $U$ ' within $U_{D_{2}}$ only is retained. The modality otili is that of a tag question where, as in 5.3.9.1 ghd 3, the speaker and hearer share a certain definite knowledge. Thig can be paraphrased informally, as in (5.73):

I tell you 'neg U'--I ask you to tell me that' you approve and/or agree with the 'ncg' aopect of 'U'--I know 'neg U'.

In (5.65 $\Lambda_{1}$ ), the spealecr opts for an agreement interpretacion of (5.65 $Q_{1}$ ). A repeated yáh $k v\left(5.65 Q_{2}\right)$, a reduced tag question, urges the addreasee to futher approve in the form of an explanation (5.65 $\Lambda_{2}$ ). The intonation pattern, emphatically raioed higher, signalo to the addressec the inglatence of the opeaker's requent for an explanation.

Intonation here doen Indicate a cextain moning difference. Although, on the wholeg we have not yet found a dichotomou intonation pattern of taga, ${ }^{12}$ as deacribed in Sadock (1976), where a rise in intonam tion aignals a requested opinion, and a fall of intonation a requested confirmation.

Tag question $5.3 .9 .1,2$, and 3 confirm what has been said elsewhere by Chang (1972), Lakoff (1974), Sadock (1974), Pope (1975), and Hudson (1975). The queotion Eype \& pointe out a claos of queations that act as 'tag' typen, although they are not maxked overtly in thefryaurface otructure. He have shown above that thio clase of questlono--yâh ky questiono-man be handied quite vell oemantically within the diocourae frame of the tag question.

In concluaton, we have pointed out how differencer of questions
can be attributed to normal (unnarked) or marked situations. In an unmarked aftuation, we have characterized the questions as bearing the 11locutionary force of asking for information. In marked oftuations, the form of interrogative has presented a conaiderable complexity of modality. We have discusoed this level of discourse in cexms of performatives and assertionc, the latter relating to the propositional content. Semantic representation of question has only been possible uith a consideration of their respective answers. Answers are thus treated as inherently linked to questions.

## FOOTNOTES TO CHAPTER FIVE

1. WH morpheme has to be understood in this section as a g1obal term that accounts for WHE morphemes and/or WR phrages.
2. For exomple, ka? niká:yv?'which one'. 10 a restricted domain WH phrase, whereas ka? nutwe 'which place' is not. There are other Wh phrases that are also rentrictive, yet to a lesser degree than ka? nike:yv?. One of them io ka? nikahá:wi 'vhich time'.
3. The tern 'quote' is used here in the sense of repeating not only another person'o sayings, but also the opeaker's own words. However, direct questions ouch as those contadning an overt performative--as, for cxmple;' I'ask you egain: 'Where 10 my money purae?'--are excluded because they request an anover from the addresoce.
4. This quention cype has been labelled 'Incredulity question' by Cole (1974).
5. Tenoen are not represented in our trees. We take no atand as to whether they should be higher predicates or not.
6. Wo have not intended to apectify the prenuppoattions contained in the treco. The reason 13 that we have not yet in mind a method powerful enough to isolate preouppositions relative to the apecch act and assertiono. Notico aleo the wao of 'REQUEST'; 'it sites betcor than 'ASK' also in quaction typoo 5.3.5.7 and 0.
7. Thin defindtion to besed on that of Pope's (1975), excluding rhetorical questions that are self-ovident to the apeater only.
8. For a more involyed discuasion of rhetorical quentions, see Enily Pope' D paper on Quegtiong and Answern in English (1975).
9. Thio lo a:tag 'Information given' question which demande no anewer; see 5.3.9.2.
10. whin alternates with variente wih1 and wi; difforences are due to atylistic end dialect peculiarticies. We have found a few utterances where the tag was oubstituted by the question particle kv. We do not think, however, that thio forwal differoace correaponde to a different tag meaning.
11. There are many pragnatic interpretations of this question type, such as a sarcastic or folcing remark, to name just two possibilities. At this poine, they are outaide of the roalm of our discussion.
-12. Hudson (1975) has nctther been able to discovex a dichotomous intonation pattern of tag questions in Britioh Englioh.
12. There 1s one question type which we have not montioned--the baby language question. In converaations between parents and their $2 \frac{1}{2}$ yearold son who was just otarting to speaic, I overhcard the following ques-tion-anower eschange:


Several otructural particularitics act this quoocion type apart from the others:
(1) Syntactically, in $Q_{1}$, the common addreso form 'you' 10 replaced by a referential noun: The speaker, the child's fother, is changing hia uoual way of addressing some one in accordance to the lingulatic competence of * the child who refers to himself by the call namo 'baby'. Notice also the relativels almple atructure of the sentence.
(11) Prooodically, the cone of the father's volce is higher than uoual. Unconscioualy, he in timitating his son.
(111) The diacourae pattom do oo expected. Question altemates with anawer. Yet, unlike ordinary question-answex exchange, the answerer is not alvayn the one addresaed. In $A_{2}$, the nother ib providing the type of an-.. gwer ohe would want her'son to give. Yet the boy keepe on repeating 'baby' which is not the answer auggented by hia wother in $A A_{2}$ and $R$, nor by his father in $Q_{3}$ as he picks up his wife'o fiftention of fetting the child know that he 10 no longer to be the baby; the parente arc axpecting another child goon.

We shall not delve into further analysis and rapresentation here, but it ls inderesting to note how this question type differs from the ochers.

## Chapter six

ANSUERS TO QUESTIONS
6.1 Introduction. In the proceding chaptero, we have tried to ohow not only that quentions determine anoreas but aloo hov anwiscre make it possible to account for underlying scmantic manings in quentions not otherwise accounted fox. For aranpla, a yah ky queotion (negoeive yeo-no q̣"notion), if anovered by 'yea' vas elossified anong the whtmperactven, if by 'no' mong the tag quateiono. In this chapter, wo aholl extminc hov queotiono relace to anovers and vice-vessa, We hope to outilne a preliminary claseification of Mohark anowers to diojunctive and wh questions.

Wuch of the portinent work ox queotiono has been done by linguiste. Hoct of the pextnent work on ancuere in the $1960^{\prime} 3$ and carly 1970'a has been done by logicizas. Wo ahall now brickly nom those whose concepto have influnced our choico of che cheoretical framovork exposed Inter on. ${ }^{1}$

Katz \& Pontal (1964) relato in quadetono and morrera somantically in the acnse that Enowara have the obm oomantic reading as the questiona which thoy anowar, $K$ \& $P$ difforcntlate anovero from queations. as followo: in the anover, the coatent of $Q 10$ not presone and the reading asoociated with $X$ ' doainating the deleted ocope mirker wh 'in suppleanted by further acmantic matarial ( $(\mathrm{p}, 90)$. Such a notion eacompaoses paraphrasen and non-paraphrase related ocatencen anong indefinitely nany poasible anowors to a particular queotion (p. 114). In other words, each queotion can have a dee of pocaible anowora, caregorically defined
by $X$ imodiately dominating Wh. Katz \& Pootal note, hovever, that in controst to Wh quastions, diojunctive queationo may not neceosarily have the ame type of interpretation. They postulate that the acntence adverbials 'yed' or 'mó' In anovero to diojunctiva queationo contain oemaptic markers that spectify the type of semontic altomation, respectively ' $x$ ' or 'not-x'. (That la to bay, 'yes' corrosponds to ' X ', and 'no' co 'not- X ' of the uquesthon dibjunct.) Hovever, their 'treatment of the relation between aentence and answer holdo for diajuncetve queations no well an Wh questions (p. 117).

The quedtion-anowex relationohip hes been defined more rigorously In Katz (1968) and subocquently in Katz (1972). Kata heo added to K \& $\mathrm{P}^{\mathrm{B}} \mathrm{B}$ notion of possible anowers and evasive angrexs (repection of the presuppooition), those of rejoction (acoertion of the falsity of the preoupposition in question) (1968), and of confogeton of ignorance (assextion of the falaity of the queationor's proaumpton: addreasee has the anowar) (1972). Katz (1968) aloo dealo with indixect anowexs aa statemento that entall a direct ancwex.

Kata A Poscal are probably the firat oneo to attempt a precise definition of anovera in Ilnguigtic term. They are followed by philosophera buch as Coton and Garner. Caton (1969), In hio article on optatemic qualifiers, inexoduced noms further notions. He argueg that a poselble
 alcti any of the follotring:

Possibly X le Y.
limybe K Is Y .
It is Ifkely that $X$ is $\chi$.
I know that X io X . otc. (p. 20)

Caton cladm thaf these anowers axe all related to the contont of ' X 1.3 Y '. Ho, valike Raty \& Postal, fincluden in the det of poosble answera inotancos of 'parbe, ponotbly, 1ikely'. These epiotente qualiftors have been qualisfed by Kata \& postal an cvasions tather then propor anowero. Gaxner (1969), in a) reply to Caton, poinco out that a distincthon has bo be made between an nover to a queation and a reoponoe which ia not an anprox to a quegtion. Ho further argues that the diatinction to be made cannot be baod on the 'content' of the question and answer,
 quageton "Wh11 you go hom?":
(6.2) I refuce to anower whether or not I will go home.' (p. 58)

Ho nould aloo considex (6.3) an. reepongls to the question 'What time is 14?':

I juat told Bill it was noon. The surn just came up. ctc. (p. 57)

This lacter argumen is wokence though in heds adnittence that the above raoponsespln (6.3) otill permit the haaror to axtive at an anower. Gamer to Laclined, novortheless, to accepe (6.6) as an angwar to the question 'that tho lo te?':
(6.4) it bolleve that it is noon.

I think that it nay be noon. (p. 58)

He thereby places hisacif in oppodition to Kate \& Doacal.

Lang (1970) expando Gamer's notion of reoponoes illuotrated above in (6.3). He suggento two alternative proceooes by which the hearer of a responae can arrive at the proper anover:
(1) anovero can be arrived at by ofrict logical implication/ entatlment;
(11) anowera can bo arrlved at , by reference to and knowledge of nona faces that axe extemal to the queation itself. (p. 197) He illustrates (6.5) and deocribea in (6.6) each one of the two points roopecelvely ao follove:
(6.5) (d) A. Did many go or (only) Fert?
$A_{1}$. Not many vent.
(1i) $Q_{2}$. Did you aleep roll?
fo $A_{2}$. ifna, I vas hureing all over.
(6.6) (1) A . Not meay vene becquse few wont.
(11) $A_{2}$. I did not olecp well BECAUSE I. Gab hurting all ovex the place, , ( $\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{C}}$ 198)

He thus posculates a single franework by which to treat. theee two types of reoponoe-anowero. This franowoxk to to relate the xesponae to the Inferred nnower. The relationohip between reoponoc and tio laplled anower he callo a 'BECAUSE-relationohtp' (p. 198).'

Wo basically agree with Lang on' thio point, but rephrase, for estample, $\left(6.6 A_{1}\right)$ as follono:

DRCAUSE not rany vene, I Assert that fev vent.

Thio reformilation permits us to diotinguioh the recponse first introduced by the entailment prodicate BECAUSE, and nezt, ito cntailed anower introduced by the performative ASSERT. We do not clatm, however, that all responses can be explained by the above pootulatc.

Lang fuxther argues with Caton's vicw regarding the reading of epistemic qualifiers. He clotms that, contrary to Caton, cach eplstemically qualifted anoter would have one of the two following readings:
(6.7) (1) I don't know whether $X$ to $Y$, but posoibly it is.
(ix) I don't really want to tell you/feel like telling you. (p. 196)
(6.7) 11luntrates the firot anower in (6.1). Lang hipue1f recognizes, that the above two readingo do not pertain to eptatemic qualifiers-as, c.g. 'eertainly'--chat do imply the knonledge dealxed by the queotioner.
'It becomes evident that Lang opto for Caton and Garner's wider notion of ancverhood. These three concur that Kata \& Postal's view on evasive answers is too narror. Long suggeats that, under preconditions as stated in (6.7), the epistenically qualifted anowers (classifted by Katz \& Postal as evapive) turn out to be corrections. The answerer thus rejecto (correcto) the prosupposition held by the questioncr that he, the ansuerer, is in a pooltion to convey the desired knowledge.

Katz (1972) noty narrow the domain of evabive onswere, by prom pooing' on additional anower type: 'confesoton of ignorance' ghe defineb it as Lang partally defines hio corrective ansvar cype (see ( 6.7 i)): as a rejection of the questioner's prosumption that the addreasé knows the Anover. Notice, though, Knta'g use of the tema 'presumption' as agalnst the ecm 'prooupposttion' ueed by Lang. We ghall not further coment on
the uec of this fomer term, nor refer to it.
;
Auatin's contribuction (1965) has been in the area of the speech act. As queotiono are linguistic'acts of aoking. Austin opecifies that anowero are linguiotic nets of angwertng queotiona; A performative hypergentence can be poasulated:
(6.8) ' I annmex you vich 'U'.

The answer is related directly uithin a discouroc frame to the question, to its propositional content on the one hand and to its discourse presuppooltions (speoch ace preconditions) on the other hand.

Labov (1972) hao made como valuable oboervationo about apecch act preconditlond. According to him, there are several precondttions to Which quootioner and anowerge have to refer in order to succeod in their exchange. If appliod to anowera, we get the following set of preconditions. The anoverer ( $A$ ) must belleve that the quentioner ( $Q$ ) belteves that:
(1) X needa to be knowa;
(ii) A has the rbility co convey $X$;
(iii) A hao the obligatton to convey $X$;

(Lv) Whac the zight to aok A to sell \%.

A, who appropsiately intexpreta these preconditions in an information questlon, and anowers accordingly, appeax to adhere to the following performative (diacourge) act:

A anoverg $Q$ with the requeoted $X$.

0
Lebov opecifies that there are many wayo to perform an anover. One device
is that of reforctng to ono or peveral of these proconditions while anowering, or while refuoing to anower. Labov further points out that docourse rulen are of a different noture than the particular propobitiong asoerted or denied. Consequently, the fomer are indepondent of the latter, Mio Antention to to link Ingulatic propoditiono to speceh acts (intended ox interpxeted), by a get of precondition ruleo.

In Chapter Four, ve have defined a get of dlacouroe preguppooftions which are odmilar in nature to the preconditions of Labov. Their differencen lie witiln thelx momberohip. The fixat component is that of:
(6.10) (1) shared knowledge (aloo mentloned eloerherc by Labov, p. 122);
\& then the componento chat are unohared by $A$ and $Q$ axe:
(11) lnowledge posacsacd;
(11i) pover to convey knovledge (Labov: 'ability');
(Iv) motivation to convey knorledge (Labov: 'obligation');
(v) the social contoxt that authorlzon oxchange of questions and anovers.
$\because$ In the followiag oection wo shall rofex to these diocourge prenuppoaitiono in order to explain the scale of answers in Nohnvk as proponed parthally by katz e 3oatal (1964), Lang (1970), Katz (1972). Church111 (1973), and Pope (1975). Whenever theae diocource ruleo are non relevant, ve shall intervenc elther with a 1inguiotic explanation, on an extralinguiselc one 1 p poosible. Yec, wo ohall linte ouroclves to a minimum of extralingutacte commatarien since the following noction denlo moxe ox-
tenaively with theac.

following conventions:
(i) If on anower to a yos-no quertion io' prefixed by 'yes' or 'no', It inll be comoidered nemantically as a pooolble anower;
(i1) If an answer not mazked overtly by 'yen' or' 'no' contains part of the proponition under quescion, ft ia tneexpreted an a possible andlex:
(ii1) If an anover io marked non-verbally as agea-no answex by gentures, for inthance it is intexpreced as a poobible onover;
(iv) If somo unlonorm conoticuenc (paraphrased or not) is given in an anovex that correapondo to the oyntactic. and senantic category of the wh conoticuent la the queotion, it whll be coneldexed as a poastble anower:
(v) if part of the unktom wh conctituent under quebtion in given; 1. whll be conoldered ao a poootblo nnover;
(vi) 15 an addition to the anomera (1) or (tv) differa oyntoctically or nemancically from the conothtuent requested, it will be conoldcred as a modification of the poosible namex as discucred in 6.1.

We now buggest the folloning preliminary clanolfication of Mohatk anowere found in everyday converoationo ae kanogatake, and in achool convemantlono at st. Regis.

1. Poostble Answers (Katz, 1972) 'A poobible anover has all the chnocteristico of an anguer except for poosibly being false ... True ponbible cnovers are correct anevera. Accordingly, the notion of a poboblble answex is that of a aentence (or the utatement it expresseb) that vould satiofy the request for information if it were true... A posbible anowar providea information beyond whet io contained in the meaning of the quentioned conocituent: (p. 211-12). We shall oubdivide this catecory into:
(1) dixect anowers (Lang) are byatactically and sonontically defined by the queation and must fulesill che required conditions an stated above in (1), (iil), and (iv); this includes paraphrases;
(11) addtion (Lang: 'complete anowers') laply or exprecs the direct anmer as vell ab some additional information; partial anovere (Lang) traply the direct ancver on fulfill conditions otated above in (ii), and (v). ,
.$\quad$. d
2. Evanion (Katz \& Postal)
(i) Verbally (Kata; Lang) an ovabivo encwer ropents the preouppobition of the queation without gupplying any new oemmeic content;
(1i) Non-verbally (Church111) an evootve caswer is comprised of an crocional reoponse, e.g. laugh.
3. Comective Anover (Lang)-negates the presuppoatetion ( 6.10 i to $v$ ) underlying tho queation, and taplicitly correcto it,
4. Confesnion of Ipnorince (Katz, 1972)-rajecto the prepupposition in the quation that the nnewer ta known by the addrasces.
5. Reply ao Anover (Lang)--impliea a direct angwer; it can be explained only from vithin ito soclolinguintle contest.
6. Incorrect Annver--implies rejection of the given information by the anoyerer himocif, by the quobtioner or by a chird party.
6.2.1 Ponotb1e Anowars. A greac number of the quentionanower pairo found in hohowl convoxations are maxked by anovers that are alther dixect, or compleend by fuxther addicions. The performative underlying those anmwers can be paraphrased and then roprosented as follows:
(6.11) I'tell you the ' $U$ ' which you are requeating.


We have opted for this ouperhyporaentence in the face of tho fact thet Mohatk han no tranalation cquivalent for anowering. This perfomatlve 13 prenent in overy anower, dintingulohing ancwern from atatomones not intended as anowero. On the aurface, it lo uoually deleted. However, in oom ingtances, the lifgeat predicate 'TmL' io retalned. Syntactico-iementic criteria nhall be enlarged upon under this heading, otnce the preouppoaltions axe respected by the anowerer. Yea-no queationo are tooxe elobowated chon Whe queotiono in the Eollowing section.
6.2.1.3. Direct Anovere. Dojunctve (yesmo) and WH quontlons take direct anowers. Let un look first at yencno, and then at: WI questions. All yes-no questione may be anowered by hy ya, hm 'yes', or yah 'no'.

Yes-No Quentlons
'yen'
(6.12) Q. yakota?kari: ec (ky) she-1B-healthy (Q), In she hoalthy?
A. hy yakotabker1:te
yes ohe-is-healthy
Yee, she to healchy.
(6.13) Q. nu?weakvand ky tai tho nu Imatenteru you-11tomit o that there PRToplace youmarelivine Do you like living ovex tharr?

```
(6.13) A. Kiv
yea
Xes, ( I like living over there).
```

            A. ya komohrónu
                yeb Comonative
                Yoa, the to a native of Como.
    A. him
yen '
Yea, (the tobacco is good).
'no'
(6.16) Q, yoh tetsutahókmas whil o not ohe-10-bmoking . TAC She inn'e amoking, fo ohe?
A. yain tetgutchókwas
not ohe-fa-amoking ( No ), ohe ion't. onoking.
Q. yâh lev tehsctohv:nis lackek ahsatataonén?!ke not Q you-are-afrald sote-time you-tould-'harm-yourselfaccidentally'
Aren't you afratd that you gould zaceldentally harm yourself a nomeday?
A. yah
no
No, (I am not afraid that I vould accidentally harm myself nomadny).
(6.10) Q. kahúrasátate kv ne nahó:tv?

GMi-10-strong $q$ NOM PRT-?-1.o-(a)-kInd
Io that kind n ntrong gun?
A. yoh
no
Ho, (chat kind it not a atrong emin).
(6.19) Q, nhe:tu kv opvaru, teres
atill. Q what , Thereoa
(Do you) belll (want dom more) mosi'; Theresa?
… A. shekee heod ofdewayg
(No, I don't mant any moze mont.)

In (6.12) to (6.15), the yes-no questiona are anovered by 'yes'. Notice the varkant fomas sor yea: hy (6.12) and (6.13), ya (6.14), and" han (6.15) . hy in the Whate equivalene for 'yeo', ya is a loan word, as well an kom in ( 6.13 ). The lattex nutht oxplatn the ehoice of the foxmex.
hm is a 'least effort' type of affirmative expression. The answerer smokes h1s pipe as he utters hm in (6.15).

In (6.16) to (6.19), the questions are answered with yah 'no'. Notice that the questions in (6.16) and (6.17) demand a negátive agreement answer (Pope, 1973: 482). They have been previously discussed under the heading of tag questions. (6.18) and (6.19) contain instead a negative disagreement answer. We are evidently stating here the semantic qualities of answers in terms of Pope (1973, 1975). A non-verbal negative disagreement answer has been exemplified in (6.19), since it was interpreted appropriately and accepted by the questioner. 'There are instances where 'yes' or 'no' are not used by the answerex. The positive or negative restating of the proposition in question will imply the type of answer. For example, in ( 6.20 ) affirmation is implied in the answer.
Q. wesaterihukóhta (kv)
you-'got-fed-up' (Q)
Did you get fed up?
A. ukaterihukóhta

I-'got-fed-up'
(Yes), I got fed up.

In an elliptic answer, it appears that most often the constituent under focus is repeated, (6,21):
Q. yetyvté:ri (kv) sakiho
you-know-h1m, (Q) Sakiho
Do you know Sakiho?
(6.21)
A. $\frac{\text { hv }}{\text { yes sakitho }}$

Yes, (I know) Sakiho.
(6.22). Q. yu?wé:sv (kv) ne ukwehuwenéha yuhrứkha
it-is-nice ( $Q$ ) NOM native-people's way' they-speak-it
It's nice they speak in Indian?
A. hv yu?wé:sv
yes it-is-nice
Yes, it is nice.

In (6.21) the object is overtly asserted, in (6.22) the predicaṭe.

WH Questions WH questions take on adverbial and pronominal answers. These answers usually convey the requested unknown information while the known information is omitted:
(6.23) Q. to nithó:yu ne satshé:nv
$\therefore$ how PRT-he-is-old NOM, your-animal

How old is your animal?
A. tyóhtu niwahni:take
nine PRT-month
Nine months.
(6.24)
Q. ka? nú
tei ni:w
ne $k \dot{y}$
thi
which PRT-place that PRT-about NOM DUB that-one
Where abouts is that place?
(6.24) A. tsi yotená:tate ${ }^{2}$
that at-'village-end'
At the end of the village.
(6.25) Q. Uhka? thi
owho that-one
Who is it?
A. rósi

Rose
Rose.

For more examples, see Chapters Three and Five. In the above examples, we have illustrated a frequent phenomenon in answers: that of information reduction. Occasionally, however, information is not reduced as in (6.26):
Q. to nityakó:yu
how PRT-she-is-old
How old is she?
A. tyóhtu niwáhsv v́ska nityakó:yu
nine PRT-ten one PRT-she-is-o1d
She is 91 (years) old.

Under possible answers, we have found several examples that are direct answers yet given by the questioner himself. The answer needs con-firmation-either of a verbal or non-verbal nature. In (6.27), the Speaker 1 is not completely sure about his assumed answeit. Therefore he seeks for confirmation of the propositional content.

## (6.27)

Speaker 1:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { Q. to kat na:?a } n 1: k u & \text { o: nv the } \\
\text { how then maybe PRT-it-is-amount } & \text { now that-one }
\end{array}
$$ How much then will they now

ashunetáahko.
they-'take-out'
get out of $1 t ?$

## 3

A. tékeni tewv?nyáwée (táhnu) kv. oyé :ri two hundred (and) DUB ten Two hundred and ten, Isn't. it?

Speaker 2: .
R. ó?tsta tail wéso ashunetáhko
scab that much they-'take-out'
Heck, that much they will get out of it.
6.2.1.2 Additions. There are answer types that have a completing answer incorporated into the direct answer; there are other answer types where an addition follows the direct answer. (The examples for this section will not be divided into yes-no answers and WH answers.). Addition Incorporated

6.2 .1 .2 Additions. There are answer types that have
a completing answer incorporated into the direct answer; there are other
answer types where an addition follows the direct answer. (The examples
for this section will not be divided into yes-no answers and wi answers.).
Addition Incorporated

Then you speak
A. yah the tekahrúkha
not thing I-speak-it
No, I don't speak it.
(6.29) Q. sateri?wayv́:sta (kv)
you-learn-matter (Q)
Do you go to school?
A. yah ni:?1
not NOM-I (learn-matter)
Not me. (I don't go to school.)

Addition Added
Q. ka? ne nukwa
which NOM PRT-it-is-beside
tseýa?tare?
person-is-included To which side does your
nesasótha
NOM-your-grandmother grandmother belong?
A. yah káneka sótsi ó:nv yakoksthv́:ha yah tetseyáávs not where too-much now she-is-aged not she-goes-out " Nowhere, she is too old now; she cannot go out.
(6.31) Q. thénu $k v$ né:?e shakoyésnas ó:n1
any-thing $Q$ CLFT he-catches-it too
Does he also catch anything?
A. hv, ráuha súha' é:so shakoyé:nas tsí ni:?i
yes, him more much he-catches-it than PRT-I
Yes, he catches much more
ni: yot
PRT-it-1s-like
than me.
(6.28) and (6.29) have additional information incorporated into the direct answer. In (6.28), 'French' is referred to as 'thing' and in (6.29), the pronominal referent has been restated. (6.29) turns into a slight correction. (6.30) and (6.31) give additional information after the affirmative or negative answer has been stated. The answerer in ( 6,30 ) qualifies, In addition, his adverbial answer. Yet, in doing so, he implies that the proposition underlying the requested constituent was a false one. Thus again his answer turns into a slight correction.

In (6.31), the assertive answer is also followed by some additional information that in this case modifies the type of proposition asserted. The answerer suggests implicitly a moderate correction of the proposition that would read as follows: 'He catches much more than you'. This example could be classified as either an addition or a correction.
6.2.1.3 Partial Answers. It seems that in Mohawk, partial answers are not very frequent. This might be due to the fact that the category is not clearly defined, or then that it is redundant. These answer types might best be handled under the heading of corrections, or possibly replias, as seen by the following examples.
(6.32) Speaker 1 jokingly asks the friends he is visiting to guess how heavy he is. The dialogue following this chal'lenge question is cited below.

Speaker 2:
$\begin{array}{lll}\text { A. nikv } & \text { vika tewv?nyáwe tyóhtu niwáhsv } \\ \text { PRT-'it-might-be' one hundred } & \text { nine } & \text { PRT-ten }\end{array}$ Maybe one hundred and ninety.
(6.32)

Speaker 1:
R. V́aka tewv?nyâwe tyyohtu niwáhsv
one hundreds nine ERT-ten
One hundred and ninety.

Speaker 2:
Q. tós . kv
'it-is-true'. Q
Is it true?

Speaker 1: (partlal answer)
A. tékeni tewv?nýawe ṭ̛hnư kayé: ti - (laughter)
two hundred and four .
(No, I don't mean that--I really mean) two hundred and, four.
(6.33)
Q. tsakútyu kv
she-loses-again $Q$
Did she miscarry again?
A. nekki nú:wak núskak
just foM-only-now NOM-only-once
(No, she did not miscarry again) she miscarried only once.
6.2.2 Evasion. An interesting aspect about verbal
evasive answers in Mohawk is their acceptability on the one hand, and rr rr
their unacceptability on the other hand. We shall exemplify firstly the acceptable answers.

Acceptable Evasion The'presupposed constituent 'somewhere' in (6.34 Q)
is repeated in the answer. The answerer thus confirms the shared knowledge, but rejects the presupposition ( 6.10 ii) that the requested information is known by him.
$\begin{array}{llll}\text { Q. ka? nú } & \text { tsi } & \text { ni:wa } \\ \text { whicy, PRT-place that } & \text { PRT-about }\end{array}$ Where abouts is it?

A. kak nú thi:kv
some PRT-place that-one
That one is somewhere.

In Mohawk, such a question'is treated as a possible answer, in spite. of its missing requirements'. We still classify it among evasive ones because of its presuppositional content. This compromise makes us wonder if the suggested categories for answers could be subject to language particular conventions. We shali illustrate this category by another example.
*
(6.35)
A. Speaker 1:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Q. naho:tv? wihi vteni:ru? } \\
& \text { PRT- ? - is-(a)-kind TAG we-shall-say-it } \\
& \text { What indeed shall we say? }
\end{aligned}
$$

Speaker 2:
$A_{1}$. hv
yes
Yes (we shall saỳ something).

Speaker 1:
$\mathrm{A}_{2} . \mathrm{hm}$
yes
Yes (we shall).

Again, $8 s$ in $(6,34)$, the answerer confirms the underlying proposition, rather than responding with the requested new information in (6.35). This answer might be a correction: The questioner who accepts the response fmplicitly accepts the correction:' 'You belleve that $I$ possess the new information-I correct you--I do not really posséss'it'. Identical examples are lis'ted in 5.8 , where the 'why' whimperative question's underlying proposition.is confirmed as above: Still we believe that answers in (6.34) and (6.35) for Mohawk speakers are possible answers.

8
This rather frequent occurrence of such answer, types and their acceptability-saggests to us that the criterion of acceptability is a decisive factor in the comprehension of the Mohawk answer system. This criterion;, we think; relates also to the sincerity condition of a speaker. If a speaker lis believed to be sincere in his answer, it then is approved of as being acceptable. ${ }^{3}$

Unacceptable Evasion Other evasive answers, however, 'are not acceptabie: We shall illustrate this non-aćceptable answer type by both a nón-verbal evasion and a verbal one. .
Q. ká?tke eh
náheyere?
when such PRT-you-did-it
When did you do that?
(6.36) A. (an embarrassed laugh).

The teacher wants to know when the student had committed a certain act. The student's emotional reaction suggests that he confirms the propositron: 'You did. it sometime'. He does not intend to convey the answer ( 6.10 iv) because of the social context ( 6.10 v ). The teacher consders his answer insincere and, therefore, continues questioning him.

Speaker 1:
Q. nahb:tv? - ahshneki:ra? terés

PRT-?-is-(a)-kind you-would-drink-1iquid Theresa What will you drink, Theresa',
ti kátu káfi
tea or coffee
tea or coffee?

Speaker 2:

| $A_{1}$. | kwa | talk | kawvoníyo yo |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| definitely regardless | word-1s-good | PRT-?-is-(a)-kind |  |
|  | Anything is all right. |  |  |

Speaker 1:
R. akwéku onú:ta? ...
all milk ...
(You want) all milk? ... (teasing)

Speaker 2:
$A_{2} . t i$
tea
Tea.

The response ( 6.37 R ) to the first (evasive) answer ( $A_{1}$ ) indicates that the answer is not accepted by Speaker 1. Speaker 2's sincerity is questioned in a teasing manner. We might conclude by saying that evasive answers are perceived by Mohawk speakers as acceptable or unacceptable as in (6.37).
6.2.3 Corrective Answers. Many answers in Mohawk are, corrective. Recourse is taken to such answers whenever there is a misunderstanding between quéstioner and answerer. The corrections may take on the following forms. possess the same knowledge ( 6.10 1) and I hereby correct in you.
(11) I don't possess the knowledge--you presuppose that I know the answer to your question and I hereby correct you (6.10 11), (Lang, p. 212).
(111) I cannot tell you X--you presuppose that I have the power to convey the answer $X$ and $I$ hereby correct you ( 6.10 iii).
(iv) I don't intend to tell you X--you presuppose that I have the motivation to answer your question and $I$ hereby correct you ( $6.10 \mathrm{fv}, \mathrm{v}$ ).
(v) I have to correct the propositional content of your ques-tion--certain facts in your question I believe are wrong-I rephrase my answer in a way that you can deduce the type of question to be answered.
(6.38 1 - $1 v$ ) usually are acceptable. as 'answers' even though they do not satisfy all the discourse preconditions. ( 6.38 v ) addresses itself to the content of a question. We shall now illustrate each of the above correction types.

### 6.2.3.1 Correction of Shared Knowledge. The question

 in (6.39) is ambiguous in two ways. Native speakers share this knowledge about the question. One meaning refers to a person not yet of school age, and the other to a person of any age. The discourse context, however, clearly indicates which one of the two meanings underlies the particular question: 'The one (child) staying at home is the only one not yet, of school age':Teacher:
Q. kátu nek akauháa ?a tyéteru , tseyá:ta kok, kv or just she-alone she-is-stahing, one-person only TAG Or is she the only one not of school age, eh?

Student:
A. tăhnu ake?nist v̂ha
and my-mother .
And my mother.

A Mohawk speaker recognizes within a particular context, the rappropriate reading of an arobiguous question auch as in (6.39). Yet, the student in (6.39 A) does not seem to recognize this conventional interpretation, or else he rejects it by giving it a literal reading. There are possibly
two reasons for such a response: (1) the student does not share the knowledge of this conventional type of interpretation ( 6.38 1); and/or (ii) the student has no other younger sister or brother 1iving at home that is not yet of school age. Therefore, he rejects the school age type of interpretation and answers with the literal one ( 6.38 v). Only the social context will solve this latter ambiguity.


> A/Q. deysi (kv)
> Daisy (Q)
> Daisy?

The answerer in (6.40) rejects the presupposition that she herself and the questioner both know, in differing degrees, that something happened to Daisy. In answering by a question, she implicitly corrects the questioner ( 6.38 1) and explicitly requests further specification of what she is supposed to convey. The questioner appropriately interpreted the request and restated her question in more explicit terms in (6.33). The first question in (6.40) is a typical Mohawk way of inquiring casually and . poiftely about certain facts a speaker is not quite certain about. The questioner, as in (6.40), seemingly gives to the addressee the choice of answering with any topic which ohe is inclined to reveal. In actual fact, the questioner fa interested in one particular topic. Shel assumes the addressee knows this topic and will thus relate it. The questioner in. some instances might be right in his assumptions. In other instances, he might be mistaken.

8

### 6.2.3.2 Correction of Possession of Knowledge. . Many

corrective answers fall into this category. The answerer in (6.41) implies that she is not capable of confirming the questioner's statement, since she does not know the truth value of the proposition concerned. She thus corrects the questioner politely an admitting that she does not know for certain if the third person's mother is alive but she might be. In reality; she did not know it at all. ${ }^{4}$ However, her intuitions were very close to the actual fact.
Q. yako?nistíshy wihi

She still has her mother, hasn't she?
A. khére kv hy yoko?nistíshv
maybe DUB, yes she-has-her-mother

- Maybe she $s$ till has her mother,
Q. to $\cdot \mathrm{n} \mathbf{1}: \mathrm{ku}$
tsi ruwahsexe
how PRT-it-is-amount' that they-pursue-him' How much are they pursuing him for (the accident)?
A. kátu tóka ûhte kak nu táa:ta tewr?nyâe or perhaps I-think some PRT-place seven hundred (or) Perhaps I think somewhere about seven' hundred,

Again in (6.42), the answerer cannot convey the expected precise answer. His corrective statement suggests the following question to be asked:
(6.43) Q. Somewhere about how'much does it seem they are pursuing him for?

Both of the answers have been accepted by the questioner as satisfactory. In other words, the corrections have been approved by the questioner.
6.2.3.3 Cortection of Power to Convey Knowledge. We have found these types mostly in classroom conversation. The studehts know the answer in (6.44) and (6.45), but they are incapabie of conveying them correctly in Mohawk.
(6.44)

Teacher:
Q. nahb:tv? vhsi:ru?

PRT-?-is-(a)-thing you-wilil-say-it
What are you going to say?

Student 1 :
$\mathrm{A}_{1}$. (silence) .

Teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{2}} \cdot & \text { rak } \\
& \text { he-(to)-me } \\
& \mathrm{My}
\end{aligned}
$$

Student 1:

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{3}: & \text { raksé: ?a } \\
& \text { little-boy } \\
& \text { A little boy. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Teacher:
C. * yah
no
No.
*C stande for correction.

## (6.44)

Student 2:

- $A_{4}$ raktai:?a
my-11ttle-brother
My 1ittle brother.

> (6.45)
$\cdot$ Teacher:
Q. nahó:tv? ki

PRT-?-is-(a)-kind this-one
What is this?

Student:
A. tsiks (everyone laughs)
fly
A fly.

Teacher:
C. * tsiktsinv:nawv
'butterfiy'
A butterfly.
The laughter of their fellow students confirms the fact that the students have given a wrong answer. In answering incorrectly, they correct the teacher's presupposition: 'I cannot tell you the answer--you presuppose that 4-a
I have the power to copuey it in Kohawk, but I hereby correct you'. The students seem to lack a certain linguistic competence in Mohawk of (6.44), there might also be the possibility that Student 1 misunderstood the question. Both interpretations are possible. In order to make the right choice, we need to possess extralinguistic knowledge about the boy's lin-

[^5]guistic capabilities, the classroom situation, etc. Notice that both answers are not accepted by the teacher. The teacher obviously knew the answers to the questions. This implies that the function of the question In each case was not, as usual, a request for new knowledge. The knowledge of the student was tested instead. Here we touch again on a sociolinguistic feature, the function of questions and the way in which they influence question-answer exchanges.

### 6.2.3.4 Correction of Motivation to Convey Knowledge.

In both (6.46) and (6.47) the questioner presupposes a 'yes' or 'no' answer and he had to be corrected. Both answerers are not inclined to respond as requested.
Q. 1:se? $\begin{array}{ll}\text { kv, wa?tesilko } \\ \text { you } & Q \text {, you-hit-it }\end{array}$ you $Q$ you-hit-it
$\therefore$ Did you hit it? (the microphone)
A. - (silenae)
(6.47)
Q. tehonatyéstu ne ratihnarákv tahnu
they-mix-themselves NOM they-are-white-kin and
Do they mix among themselves, the white people and
ukwehú: we
native-people
the Indlans?
A. yah ki akwé só:tsi
not but all too-much
(Yes), but not too such.

The answerer in (6.47) does not intend to respond either positively or negatively. He is willing, nevertheless, to reply with a degree response. The answerer in (6.46) does not want to confirm that he hit the microphone because of the class situation. This was an embarrassing question. By not answering, he rejects the question which is really an accusation, and corrects the teacher's presupposition that the addressee wants to respond. Both answers, verbal or non-verbal, were acceptable to the questioner.

### 6.2.3.5 Correction of Propositional Content.

| Q. oh né:?e níyot | ne rake?nina ne |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| WH CLFT | PRT-it-is-11ke | NOM my-father NOM |

In what way is it that on my father' side
kv nukwá $s$ toká?a routateko?okú: ? a
here PRT-side truly they-are-siblings.
they (your father and my father) are truly sibling to each other?
A. ýahtv ake?nistŕna tóka kv né:?a ne ya?nîha no-indeed my-mother I-think DUB CLFT NOM your-father No, it was my mother, I think, that was married
ro?nihkáha rotinyako?ū:ne?
his-deceased-father they-'got-married'
to your father's deceased father (grandfather).

The answerer seems at first to reject the complete propositional content of "the question, (6.48). Yet, he then goes on to specify the constituents
to be corrected: His answer might suggest the following corrected question:
(6.49) In what way is it that your mother and my father's deceased father are truly siblings?
6.2.4 Confession of Ignorance. This answer type we have separated from the corrective one, since its occurrence is very frequent and its meaning finalizes the question-answer exchange on the particular subject under discussion.
(6.50) Q. ka? ne terés
where NOM Theresa
Where is Theresa?
$\stackrel{9}{9}$
A. tó:ka
'I-don't-kifow'
I don't know.
(6.51) $Q$. to ne nityakó:yu ne su
how NOM PRT-she-is-old NOM Sue"
How old is Sue?
A. tó:ka
'I-don't-know'
I don't know.

The answerer responds not to the content of the question, but to one of the questioner's presuppositions. In (6.50), the answerer claims ignorance
in respect to the expected knowledge ( 6.10 11). The answerer in ( 6.51 ) * might also reject the question on the basis of any of the other presuppo 7 sitions ( 6.10111 - v): 'Either I am not capable/I don't want to tell you, or the social context inhibits me from teliling you the requested answer'. In any case, the answerer always pretends to be ignorant with respect to a presupposed knowledge supposedly in his possession.
6.2.5 Replies to Answers. We have pointed out previ-

Otasly that replies imply direct answers.
(6.52) Q. tf (kv)
tea (Q)
(Do you want) tea?
A. yah tewakateryf:tare oh nátyere
not I-know-it WH PRT-I-should-do-it
I don't know what I should do.
$\because$
(6.53) Q. ukwa:t1 ' (kv) akenawi:ra

I-10st-1t
(Q) my-teeth

Did I lase my teeth?
A. yah teyohnekihsá:ku
not one-searches-for-1iquid
You don't need to get drunk.

These cype of answers are used quite frequently in everyday conversations'. They are not paraphrases of direct answers. Yet, many of them are accepted. This implies that there is a mechanism that allows the addressee to
deduce direct answers from replies. We have pointed out one possible mechanism in 6.1 by Lang. In this section, we shall limit ourselves to two replies that can be explained only within the framework of a particular social situation. The reply in (6.52) presupposes that the answerer shares the knowledge with the questioner (host) that the tea pot is empty. New tea will have to be prepared. Questioner and answerer know also that the wife of the addressee has rejected the offer. The answerer's hesitation can be interpreted as follows: 'Yes, I want tea but I don't want you to prepare tea for me alone; therefore, I don't know what to do.' The host correctly interprets the answer and prepares some more tea.

A direct answer to the reply in (6.53) can be deduced as follows from the social context and knowledge" about some cultural factors: the questioner is talking without teeth; he is not drunk. When you are drunk you do stupid things. Losing teeth (for instance) is a stupid thing. 'You do not need to get drunk in order to do such a stupid thing as to lose your teeth--I tell you as requested that you lost your teeth.'
6.2.6 Incorrect Answers. This answer type is closely related to the answer type in 6.2 .3 .5 where the propositional content of the question is corrected. In the latter, the answerer corrects the presupposition held by the questioner. In the former, correction of the profigitional content of the answer is corrected either by the answerer himself, by the questioner, or by a third party.
6.2.6.1 Self-Imposed Correction. In (6.54), the
answerer corfects himself. She is correcting the informational content * of her answer. The correction is self-imposed.
Q. tsi nt
niye:teru akł:ru
where PRT-place PRT-she-lives I-would-say-it
Where is the place
yakotauháa:nu ní nú, niyé:teru
she-boards, wherer PRT-place PRT-sher-1ives
where she is staying?
A. ne $k i$ né:?e rakuháhwha ne kvnyehrá?a

NOM this-one CLFT he-youngest NOM my-smallest-brother-in-law

The youngest of my brothers-in-law
yah ne tekenihatu kvnyehráara . sakiho ..
no NOM second-youngest my-smallest-brother-in-law Sakiho no, the second youngest of my brothers-in-law Sakiho,
ne $k i$ ethó, nú . niyé:teru asvnáhsu
NOM this-one there PRT-place PRT-she-lives at-'Centre-Road' that's where she is living--
ki
this-one
at the Centre Road.
6.2.6.2 Correction Imposed by the Questioner." The teacher is correcting the student's answer in (6.55).

## (6.55)

Teacher:
Q. nahó: tv?

PRT-?-is-(a)-thing then $Q$ NOM you-wouid-say-it What would you say then (if this one sitting here were a little girl)?

## Student2

| $A_{1} \cdot$ | eksá:?a |
| :---: | :--- |
|  | little-girl |
|  | A little girl. |

Teacher:
$R_{1}$. yah
no
No.

Student:
$A_{2} \cdot$ raksá:?a
1ittle-boy
A little boy.

## Teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { R }_{2} . & \text { khe } \ldots \\
& \text { I-(to } \text { - -her } \\
& \text { My } \ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

Student:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { A }_{3} \cdot \quad \text { khe } 2 \mathrm{kv}: ? \mathrm{a} \\
& \text { my-1ittle-sister } \\
& \text { My little sister. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Again the proposition is rejected by the questioner, who is familiar with the correct answer. This straightforward, explicit type of correction in
(6.55) is typical of testing situations. Without knowledge of the social situation, and rôles of participants, to name a few social criteria, it is impossible to explain certain types of questions (marked ones) and certain types of answers. We shall talk more about interrelationships between social and linguistic constituents in the next section of this paper.
6.2.6.3 Correction Imposed by a Third Party. The wife
corrects her kúsband in (6.56):
(6.56) Q. to nif:wa thi - yonuhsawfi?te
how PRT-it-is-big that-one their-house-addition' How big is their house addition?

Husband:

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
A_{1} \cdot \text { ne } k w i & \text { thi:kv ... } \\
\text { NOM } & \text { definitely thatione } . .
\end{array}
$$

It is that ...

Wife:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{2} \text {. yah sakino akwé rahawe ne yah tekowa:nv } \\
& \text { not Sakiho all he-is-holding NOM not it-is-big } \\
& \text { No, Sakiho, all the place he has is not big. }
\end{aligned}
$$

The answer is judged-this time not from the questioner's point of view but from a third party's--as incorrect; correction is inflicted upon the answerer and, along with it, interference. This latter phenomenon is rather rare in Mohawk. ${ }^{5}$ Unless there can be added a joking remark, or a word pun, people normally await their turn to speak in Mohawk conversations.

These last three correction types differ from the preceding answer types on the basis of the role relationship between questioner and answerer. In usual question-answer situations, the speaker who asks a question presupposes that the answerer alone has the knowledge and the intent to reiate unknown information. He thus conveys the authority of informing to the answerer. Yet; the answerer might sometimes reject the, authority given to him by the questioner, implicitiy stating that he does not belleve he has the authority to respond. If he chooses to answer in this case, he is only apparently assuming his authority. Whereas, in the last three correction instances, the authority of informing is, at first, given to him by others, but then is annulled either by the answerer himself or by the others.

We conclude from this chapter that answers can be systematized in terms of their discourse presuppositions. This has thus been a preliminary attempt to capture some of the presuppositional traits that link answers to their questions. We have also seen that social constituents interrelate with presuppositional ones. Answers cannot be adequately described without taking social criteria into consideration, e.g. acceptable va. macceptable evasion. The next section endeavors to focus on social aspects within the discourse analysis of Mohawk questions and answers in use.

1. Keenan \& Hull (1973) limit the domain of answers as follows:
'We shall consider a logical answer to a question to be a response to it which supplies the information requested'. Such a definition is too narrow and, therefore, nonfunctional as an analytic framework for our data. Another definition of answers that we consider too broad, for example, is that of Alice Davison (1975). She proposes 'four kinds of satisfactory answers: (i) agreement, (i1) refusal, (ii1) explanation of why the request cannot or will not be complied with, and (iv) compliance'.
2. On the surface, locative answers are signalled by the locative suffixes -ku 'in', -ke 'at', -oku 'under', and -akta 'near', in noun phrases; or the locative prefix ye- in verbs unambiguously signalling some kind of location. Yet often, they are omitted as in (6.24 A), if there is no contextual ambiguity as to where the requested element in the answer refers. to.
3. Acceptability, in Chomskian terminology, is based on the intuition of the individual. Acceptability, within conversation, is based on shared values (or knowledge) within the speech community. Take, for example, our answer in (6.34), that is believed to be sincere because it has already passed the test of shared values, and so is acceptable.
4. To add a Ifttle bit of a personal flavour to this example, the two conversants were talking about my ofn mother. My personal consultant, the answerer, informed the other person about my mother, and how far she was living from the area, without really knowing the facts. I have to admit that her intuition was quite accurate.
5. In all my question-answer material, I have found only two instances where the speaker was interrupted by another person.

# ‘ CHAPTER ŠEVEN <br> TOWARDS A SOCIOLINGUISTIC ANALYSIS 

OF QUESTION AND ANSWER USAGE


#### Abstract

7.1 Introduction. Language cannot be fully explained outside of communication situations. Consider the following example. In a discussion about an accident caused by a snow plow, a hearer wanted to know:


Ka? nú ! toiv, ní:wa
which PRT-place that PRT-about
Where abouts is it?

The answer was:

| (7.2) | kak núwe | thí:kv |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| some PRT-place that-one |  |  |
|  | It is somewhere. |  |

A gesture with the chin indicated the direction in which, the answerer aspumed the accident to have taken place.


Now imagine a family table conversation. One of the children enters the kitchen crying. He has obviously hurt himself. The father carefully inspects the child's hand while asking (7.1). The child replies in pointing at his bruised finger.

In the first instance, the addressee appropriately interpreted (7.1) as a request for verbal information. In uttering (7.2) and pointing In the assumed direction, the answerer replies in an acceptable way, though $r$ with an indirect answer. In the second instance, the addressee appropri-
*ately interpreted (7.1) a request for an action:. 'Show me where you hurt your hand'. The answerer thus shows where he got hurt.

These two fllustrations clearly exemplify how questions tend to be polysemic and therefore ambiguous, by taking on different meanings in different social contexts. It follows that an extralinguistic context has to be coupled with a linguistic one, if the meaning of certain question and answer pairs is to be rendered ficar and unambiguous.

This we have pointed out in the chapter on discourse: a descriptive frame is chosen that is sensitive to discourse contexts of linguistic and extralinguistic nature. But also repeajedy within the chapter on marked question types, reference has been made to particular situational contexts. Notice, to choose one example from many; that the heading of 'quiz questions' points to a particular setting. In the chapter on answers, replies swere judged as acceptable under kertain social conditions, whereas under other conditions, they were unacceptable; (see, e.g. evasions).:

What we are saying then, is that the analysis of our data has been oriented iq the previous chapters (Four to Six), within a socially realistic linguistics' (Hymes, 1972). In other words, questions and answers have been considered as valid and, therefore, analyzable because of their actual occurrence within a real speech situation. Other inguists, Labov, R. Lakoff, and Fillmore to name a few, have committed themselves to such an orientation. In the last part of this study, we shall align oursel ves within a'socially constituent linguistics' as termed by Hymes (1972: 4). This type of lingufatics is 'concerned with social as well as referential (1inguistic) meaning, and with language as part of commi-
cative conduct and social action ... This being so, an adequate approach must begin by identifying social functions, and discover the ways in which Inguistic features are selected and grouped together to serve them." ". (1972: 2).

Patterns now looked for will be sociolinguiatic in nature where linguistic (referential) meaning is viewed as intrinsically linked to the social one. Hymes defines the latter in the following terms: 'the two main facets of "social" meaning can be identified as interpefsonal and textual, following Halliday (1970) ... That is, the facets of meaning involved with nonlinguistic context (the participants in the speech act and their interaction in that setting), on the one hand, the facets involved with the linguistic context, on the other:' (1972: 24).

The context (Inguistic and extralinguistic) provides the speaker and addressee with basic meaning signals, that will enable them to understand each other's questions and answers. A contextual approach has been advocated by Kjolseth (1972). He, however, argues against maintainIng a dichotomy between inguistic and extralinguistic context as it relates to the understanding of conversations. He postulates that language is co-sustaining with context, and vice versa. Each one depends upon the other to be understood. We agree with Kjolseth that a dialectical approach to language is misleading. Our aim is that of a unfied theory of conversational behaviour. Yet, at the present, this is net possible; we have to limit ourselves to at least a preliminary dichotomy.

Can we truly comprehend the complex nature of question and answer usage in Mohawk, without having first inquired into its Iinguistic
shape and meaning? We postulate not. However, if the analysis was to stop at the linguistic level, then the understanding, of the discourse mould be restricted and inadequate. A discourse-ariented approach eventually has to take into consideration extraiinguistic context, or 'social meaning' as termed by Hymes, and ultimately, meaning as a unified discipline.
R. Lakoff confirms with us a context-sensitive approach to language: 'What we are dealing with here is something extralinguistic--the way in which individuals relate to one another-mat directly affects the use of language. We must understand something about nonlinguistic social interaction before we can see the generalization that is in effect regulating the use of sentences.' (R. Lakoff, 1972: 910).

In this study, we are concerned about the way in which context is necessary for the interpretation of questions and their answers. We are also concerned about the way in which the use of questions affects 'non-linguistic socialifinteraction' (R. Lakoff, ibid.). Hence, it will be stressed that the social context, on the one hand, affects the use and Interpretation of language and, on the other, depends upon the use of language.
7.2 Methodology. So far we have established the fact that language and social context are interdependent. It follows that meaning is of linguistic and social nature. Meaning properties of questions and answers thet refer to their social functions now have to be isolated.

There have been a number of diacussions on the concept of func-
tions : Jakobson (1960) perceived functions as an inherent linguistic property of the act of commuication, as does Hymes (1969: 6) who claims to have been greatly influenced by Jakobson's functional approach. Firth (1935) and Malinowaki's view of function (1935) was the soctal value of the speech act. For others such as Skinner (1957), for example, the function of interaction was viewed from a psychological point of view; , so likewise for Ervin-Tripp (1971). In spite of Skinnerian influence, Ervin-Tripp defines functions in social rather than psychological terms. She states 'that intent or function is part of the constellation of social features out of which interaction is generated' (P. 244).

The speaker uttering question (7.1), for example, intends to produce a certain effect upon the hearer. The function of the utteftance (7.1) is accomplished by means of the addressee's recognition of this Intention; (see also Grice (1975), e.g. the conveying of the requested information as in (7.2)). The corollary of this is that the speech act of inquiring has intents as its input. We shall use from now on functions In the senae of intents. The term function will, therefore, have a rather restrictive meaning in this paper. We shall identify these functions in terms of a set of functional categories, and then examine their realizations in everyday and school conversations.

However function, as defined above, is only one aspect of social meaning. It is related to, and dependent upon, other social features. Their interdependence plays an important part in the understanding of questions. Verbal interaction inevitably is characterized by certain social features such as the type of setting and the participants in the setting. This we have illuatrated in the differential use of question (7.1): two different
settings result in two different interpretations of (7.1). There are different ways of representing such social features, Halliday (1964, 1973) proposed a threefold analysis of the social context in terms of fleld, mode, and tenor. The field corresponds to the ongoing activity (setting and end), the mode to the rhetorical channel, and the tenor to the role relationships among participants. A more detailed descriptive model has been developed by Dell Hymes (1964, 1967, 1971, 1972), generally known as the Ethnography of Speaking. In ordet to capture the patterns relating social context to speech variation, he set up an heuristic paradigm of categorical features which we may sumarize as (i) setting, (ii) participants, (iii) ends (intent and effect), (iv) act sequence (message form and topic), (v) key (manner and tone), (vi) instrumentailties (channel and code), (Vil) norms of interaction (specific behaviours), and (vii) genres (types of speech acts, e.g. conversation, curse, etc.). Structured relationships between two or more of these categorical features result in rules of speaking. We can informally formulate the following rule of speaking in respect to question (7.1): the presence of at least two participants (ii), within a certain setting (i), for certain ends (iii). This rule applies to conversations 'in general'. (For a particular rule, the more powerful, the more apt it is to capture a more general pattern.) In a poetic speech; however, the message form and topic (iv), as well as the channel (vi), whuld have to be added to the setting (i) and ends (iii). The feature of participants (ii) would be less significant, and therefore, omitted.

Dell Hymes claims that his approach is thus structural on the one hand, and functional on the other: the selection (structuration) of
certain categorical features, as against others, determines the particular functions to be performed. In (7.1) for instance, the rule of speaking is restricted to a particular conversational act-that of inquiring. Inquiring serves the function of asking for new information in the first situation, and in the other, it serves the function of asking for an action.

The problem is now to know what theoretical validity to ascribe to such a descriptive frame, its categorical features, and the rules and functions their interrelationships entail. It seems to us that Hymes is utterly coriect in attributing a taxonomic validity to his descriptive model rather than a theoretical one. Further data thus will have to be empirically tested in order to refine and define more precisely-omitting overlaps and redundancy--concepts that shall lead ultimateily to theoretical and universal grounds within the ethnography of speaking. ${ }^{2}$

Methodologically, Dell Hymes' heuristic paradigm of categorical features has been of special value as a contribution to empirically oriented research on the use of speech. The once insurmountable domain of social context has become more accessible through the narrowing of its scope in terms of features. In this paper, we shall draw from Hymes' paradigm some social features that seem to pertain particularly to questions and answers in conversations, such as setting and participants. The topic, though pertinent, is outside the scope of this research. The feature 'ends', because of its imprecise and overlapping definition, has been omitted. Instead, intents are treated as functions in the sense of Ervin-Tripp. Functions, when necessary, shall also be stated in Hymes'
terms of relations among features. We shall see that one does not exclude the other. Hymes' definition is thus complementary to that of Ervin-Tripp. If functions are findeed 'part of the constellation of social features' (Ervin-Tripp), the functions can be just as much a product of the social features, as the social features can be affected by functions.

This next section is an attempt to describe in sociolinguistic terms low Mohawk people use questions and answers within their community, in the classroom, and outside of the class room. Our particular focus of interest is the classroom conversation, with reference to everyday conversations, in order to capture major differences between a marked situation-that of the classroom--and the unmarked one--that outside of the classroom.

### 7.3 Implications of a Functional Analysis. Conversa-

 tion is motivated verbal interaction. All questions (and answers) hence are potivated. This implies that questions have underlying intents which we are calling functions as explained previously. From a gramatical viewpoint, questions come under one particular sentence type (interrogative) and answers under another (declarative). In actual performance, there does not exist such a simple one-to-one relationship. A question may take on different social meanings. One single sentence type is thus made to serve a number of different functions. Take, for example, the utterance: 'Would you close the door?'. In a child-directed conversation, this interrogative functions as an irrevocable command for action. In aitadultdirected conversation, it functions as a request for action that can,however, be politely refused. If we want to interpret Mohawk questions appropriately we have to relate them to their 'much larger set of actions' (Labov, p. 121) that they accomplish, or to their functions.

The way we see rules as relevant to our present discussion $1 s$ within the context of the discourse. Previously, within the scope of discourse analysis, some rules have been described in terms of discourse presuppositions. We shall enlarge this concept. Henceforth, within the realm of sociolinguistici analysis, discourse presuppositions shall also be taken into consideratión.

In the previous text, for example, 'shared knowledge' is one of the discourse presuppositions referred to. We postulate that shared knowledge is also presupposed within the scope of sociolinguistic interpction. What we really say then, is that underlying functions of questions ake assumed by the speaker to be known and understood by the addressee. If the knowledge is truly shared an appropriate interpretation will be possible and a resultant answer that is context-sensitive in nature will be probable. Whenever a question is uttered the answerer hence will have to select intuitively from among the possible functions the one that he assumes to motivate the act of inquiring in that particular situation. In answering appropriatel受, he thereby acknowledges and confirms the function that is presupposed bÿ the questioner to be known by both the questioner and the answerer. In answering inappropriately, the answerer proves, of course, that the questioner in his assumption has been wrong.

What are these functions then that are mutually known by speakers within a Mohawk community? As a first step in answer to this ques-
tion, an heuristic paradigm of functions will have to be established. Functions change with time lapses and between cultures. Therefore, this paradigm is open to modifications in the future. It is based upon the empirical analysis of a liarge set of different questions and their answers In everyday conversations in Kanesatake, and during school classes at St. Regis. Answers, if accepted, serve as a guideline for the identification of functions presupposedily known by questioner and answerer.

What are the criteria by which funetions are correctly used and interpreted within a conversation? This question will have to be answered in relation to different situation features. In this paper, we shall 1imit ourselves to two settings. As for partićipants, we shall refer to them when necessary, but not in a systematic fashion.
7.4 Functions Within Everyday Conversations. The qüestions we have observed in everyday conversations seem to fall into the following seven functional categories.

1. Request for information
2. Request for confirmation
3. Request for (a) further explanation and/or (b) further conversation
4. Request for repetition
5. Request for (a) action and/or (b) change of action
6. Request for delay
7. Request for a permitting action

The order of the above functions represents their relative frequency,
ranging from the most frequent to the least frequent one. Notice tho the performative , verb 'request' ${ }^{3}$ relates functions to the syntactic utterance type (interrogative) that they underlie. We shall now examine briefly each one of the seven functions.
7.4.1 Function I: Request for Information. Most of the questions observed in everyday, conversations (about 67.0\%) fall into this first category. They ask either for new information as in the case of WH questions ( $46.4 \%$ ) and conditional WH questions ( $1.9 \%$-for examples, see 5.3.3), or they ask for information that is of assertive or negative nature as in the case of disjunctive questions (51.7\%). For the relative frequency of the above question types, see Fig. 7.1 on the following page.

There was one difficulty that we observed with certain disjunctive questions. When asserted, fheir function seemed to be of a twofold nature: to seek affirmation as well as confirmation, (7.6 $Q_{2}$ ). 'Within a certain discourse context, it is as if the questioner is more certain than not of the assertive value of the proposition he seemingly questions. In such instances, both functions appear to be asked for-affirmation and confirmation--with the latter taking on the rôle of a primary function. It follows that the functional content of these questions thus varies in degrees within different discourse settings.
(7.3) Q. to uhte nityako:yu thílkv how I-wonder PRT-she-is-old that-one I wonder how old she is?


Everyday Conversation

## Function I: Request for Information.

Fig. 7.1 shows the distribution of question types within Function $I$, which accounts for $67.0 \%$ of the total number of everyday questions.
A. áhsv niwáhsv áhsv
three PRT-ten three
Thirty three.
(7.4)
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { Q. skáhawe? } & \text { kv } \\ \text { she-is-holding-it } & Q \\ \text { Is she pregnant? }\end{array}$
A. yah
no
No.
(7.5) Q. tóka vshatya?taráko ne ya?niha unka? káti
if he-himself-will-leave NOM your-father who then
If your father is going to leave, who then
, o:nv tvsháta?ne
now he-again-'stands-up,
will now take his place?
A. tó:ka
'I-don't-know'
I don't know.
(7.6)

Speaker 1:
$Q_{1}$. wa fkáa:ru kv ne kfov tsohké:ri wisk tewrfnyáwe
she-said-itQ NOM I-think Tsohkeri five hundred Didn't Tsohkeri maybe say that ...
(7.6)

Speaker 1:
$\ldots Q_{1}$.
thi ruwahsere?
that-one they-pursue-him
they pursue him for five hundred (dollars)?

Speaker 2:
$Q_{2}$. nek kv ne tsi tekatáhsta vhakárya?ke fust $Q$ NOM that bus-station (he-will-pay-it He will only pay the bus station that much?

Speaker 1:
A. hv
yes
Yes.
7.4.2 Function II: Request for Confirmation. Among the utferances we classified as questions, $16.2 \%$ function as requests for confirmation. The most frequent were (1) tag questions (7.7) - (7.10); the less frequent were (11) disjunctive questions, (1i1) queclaratives, (iv) rhetorical, and (v) echo questions; aee Fig. 7.2 on the following page. However, there is the possibility that in actual fact, confirmation Is asked for much more frequently and this in the form of certain tags. We noticed that every so often, the tag wahi-as described in 5.3.9.2-occurs in utterances where a verbal answer is not really expected, (7.12). The tag is used as an interactional signal signifying the awareness of the presence of at least one addressee and his participation desired in the form of a confirmative nodding with his head, for example, which is appreciated but not mandatory. $4^{\circ}$ Most of these tags we have not counted. There-

FIGURE 7.2
Everyday Conversation

## Function II: Request for Confirmation.

| DSJ | $21.4 \%$ |
| :--- | ---: |
| ECH | $4.8 \%$ |
| RHT | $7.1 \%$ |
| QCL | $14.3 \%$ |
| TGC | $26.2 \%$ |
| TGY | $26.2 \%$ |



Fig. 7.2 shows the distribution of question types within Function II, which accounts for $16.2 \%$ of the total number of everyday questions.
fore, the frequency percentage $1 s$ only representative of tag types 5.3.9.1, 3, and 4. Tag type 2 is illustrated only below. Yet usually it has not. beén counted.
7.4.2.1. Tag Questions. Tag question types 5.3.9.1 and 2 may ask respectively for verbal (7.7), or non-verbal (7.8) confirmation. The non-verbal response weakens the function of confyrming to the point where it could be replaced by a descriptively more adequate label--that of acknowledging. For the time being, the margin between confirmation and acknowledgement is not defined clearly enough to justify separating them into twa different categories.
(7.7) Q. 'ronatewirara?kwv, w1 th1
they-kept-baby TAG that-one,
They adopted the baby, didn't they?
A. ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{hv}$, ronatewirara?kwv thi
yess they-kept-baby that-one Yes, they adopted hima
(7.8) Q. rauhwatv̂?a ki?" wăhi
nis-nephew definitely TAG It's his nephew, isn't it?

The yah ky tag quéstion 5.3 .9 .4 is often used as a request for negative confirmation, where a minimal answer yah 'no' is acceptable,
(7.9) Q. yah káti kv né;?e teyetsiya?tya?tarả:ni ne not then $Q$ CLFT he-joins-you NOM Isn't he foining you,
samat́f:t ne rá:ne
your-'my-sunt' NOM her-husband your aunt's husband?
A. yah
no
No.
(7.10) Q. yáh kv ne teyahwéskwani né:?e
not $Q$ NOM she-likes-it CLFT
She doesn't like that? (having her fortune told)
A. yah né:?e teyakauwéskwani ne tékets not CLFT she-likes-it NOM the-cards. (fortune cards) She doesn't like her cards (read).
7.4.2.2 Disjunctive Questions. In certain situations, a yes-no question takes on the function of a request for confirmation, as previously mentioned. We note here again that conflrmation inevitably entails assertion. In (7.11) the questioner had just been informed about the addressee's age. He remarks:
(7.11) Q. 6:nv kati kv ahsv oniwahsv sha?té:ku tesohseriyá:ku now then $Q$ three PRT-ten eight you-are-years-old Then you are now thirty-eight years old?
(7.11) A. khé:re káti kv
maybe then DUB
I guess so. (hesitant)
7.4.2.3 Queclarative Questions. These request assertion, yet more so confirmation, by the answerer. Confirmation thus seems to entall assertion.
Q. Kati nutyé:rv tsi wahóryo nihukstŕha
then PRT-it-is-(a)-matter that he-beat-him PRT-he-is-old
Then why did he beat him-he is old?
$\begin{array}{lll}\text { A. ne kwf } & \text { ká:tu } \\ \text { NOM definitely } & \text { I-say }\end{array}$
That's what I say.
7.4.2.4 Rhetorical Questions. They' do not require an answer as described in 6.2.1. Often, their propositional content is acknowledged or confirmed by the addressee, as in (7.13). If there is absence of an answer, it is to be concluded that the addressee agrees with the presuppositions and the proposition underlying the question. His silence, therefore, is to be interpreted as a confirmation.

## (7.13)

Speaker 1:
Q ${ }_{I}$. káty na? nyvtśa:wv?ne
then supposedly PRT-1t-will-happen
Then what will happen?
(7.13)

Speaker 1:

onú:ta? ne akoya?okú:?a
milk NOM her-children
to her children?
A. hv
yes
Yes.
7.4.2.5 Echo Questions. Echo questions expressing surprise or doubt may function as confirmation requests.

> St. o:nv tho natáhsawe
> now there they-8tarted
> Now they have started.
Q. o:nv kv
now $Q$
Now?
A. hv
$f$
yes
Yes.

### 7.4.3 Function III: Request for (a) Further Explanation,

and/or (b) Further Conversation. The majority of the (1) tag questions count in this category, and a few (ii) queclaratives, (iii) echo questions, and (iv) yes-no questions; ${ }^{5}$ see Fig. 7.3 on the following page. Its frequency is that of 9.2 z overall. This category seems to be rather closely

FIGURE 7.3 Everyday Conversation
Function III: Request for Further Explanation and/or
Further Conversation.

| DSJ | $4.2 \%$ |
| :--- | ---: |
| ECH | $4.2 \%$ |
| QCL | $12.4 \%$ |
| TGY | $79.2 \%$ |



Fig. 7.3 shows the distribution of question types within Function III, which accounts for $9.2 \%$ of the total number of everyday questions.
related to Function II. Both might be members of the same category, We have treated them under separate headings for the reason of cooccurrence conditions. Function II can co-occur with Functions III (a) as $\operatorname{In}\left(7.16 Q_{1}\right),(7.17)$, and (7.18) $;$ or $(a)$ and $(b)$ as in (7.15); if Function II has been asked for in the previous question ( $7.16 \mathrm{Q}_{1}$ ), its cooccurrence with Function III (a) and/or (b) is not acceptable.-
7.4.3.1 Tag Questions. wahi tag question 5.3.9.3 belongs in this functional category, as well as those yah kv tag questions that do not ask for confirmation alone. In some situations, either the former or the latter were used for the purpose of obtaining further explanation, Function III (a). In other instances, the latter, when used, were motivated by a further intent, that of inviting the addressee in a polite way to keep the conversation going, Function III (b). Function III (a) might or might not imply Function III (b). The latter Function, though, always entails the former. In (7.15), Function III (a) is implied:

tyé: teru
she-1ives
far distance away.

In (7.16)--Tag type 5.3.9.4--Q implies Function III (a), and $Q_{2}$ implies Function III (b). My consultant converses with her son who is not very talkative. The questioner repeated yáh kv 'no eh?' until finally she succeeded in drawing her son into conversation. ${ }^{6}$
(7.16)

Speaker 1:
St. yah ki? nu:wa káneka thá:ke?
not ${ }^{\text {but }}$ now nowhere I-go
But I am not going anywhere right now.

## Speaker 2:

$Q_{1}$. yáh kv
no $Q$
No, eh?

Speaker 1:
${ }^{\prime} A_{1} \cdot \begin{aligned} & \text { yah } \\ & \text { no }\end{aligned}$
No .

Speaker 2:
$Q_{2}$ yáh kv (emphatically raised intonation)
no $\mathbf{Q}$
No, eh?

Speaker 1:
$A_{2}$. yah 1:kehre? nú:wa vkatorishv
no I-want now I-will-rest
No, I want to have a rest now.

It should be noted that when ýah kv 'no eh?' is used once, a confirmational one-word answer yah 'no' (but not hv 'yes') is acceptable. When yáh kv is used again, further conversation, and with it, further explanation
is expected in (7.16).
7.4.3.2 Queclarative Questions. The queclarative (7.17)
demands confirmation and further explanation. Confirmation is given by one answerer and further explanation by another.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { Q. yah ni nek }  \tag{7.17}\\
& \text { not only fust } \\
& \text { It is not only th } \\
& \text { ahuwvatervnaye: } \\
& \text { they-will-pray-ov } \\
& \text { why don't they } \\
& \text { tehuwe:yahre } \\
& \text { they-remember-it } \\
& \text { remember? }
\end{align*}
$$

$A_{1} \cdot h v$
yes
Yes.
$\begin{array}{rlll}A_{2} & \text { né ki thi } & \text { ohné:ka eh nikayérha ne } \\ \text { NOM this-one that-one liquor that PRT-does-it NOM }\end{array}$
So it is the alcohol that is doing that--
thi . akwéku tekayerúnyus
that-one all it-'mixes-up'
that it mixes every one up.
(7.17) $\mathrm{A}_{3} \cdot \mathrm{hv}$
yes
Yes.

$$
1
$$

7.4.3.3 Echo Questions. The questioner in (7.18 EQ) expresses surprise about the propositional content of the preceding utterance. His intent is to get confirmation and, if possible, further commentary on the constituent in question. In (7.18) his intents are satisfied by the answerer.
(7.18)

Speaker 1:

> Q. thó ne kv ná:?a thí:kv wisk yaẃ:re nikahwistake
> there NOM Q maybe that-one five ten
> Wasn't it then fifteen dollars
wahanáto , wisk yawv́re wasako?tyerú?kwa
he-charged-it, five ten he-would-take-them
that he charged--fifteen to take them there?

Speaker 2:
EQ. wisk yawfire (kv)
five ten (Q)
Fifteen?

Speaker 1:
A. wisk yawí:re sakỉho tâhnu yakwateno?sohokú:?a thi:kv five tén Sakiho and our-other-siblings, that-one Fifteen (dollars) for Sakino and our other siblings.

### 7.4.3.4 Yes-No Questions. The questioner in (7.19)

asks for an explanation of the suggestion made by the preceding speaker:

Speaker 1:
St. oyórha?ne tyó:karahwe sateró:rok
tomorrow night you-watch-it
Tomorrow night you watch (channel two).

Speaker 2:
Q. ya (kv) (rising intonation)
yes (Q)
Really?

Speaker 1:
A. kakari:yos ...
it-is-nice-story ...
There is a nice story on ...
7.4.4 Function IV: Request for Repetition. Our data contained WH questions with a $3.8 \%$, frequency whose function was that of asking for repetition, such as in (7.20); see Fig. 7.4 on the following page. Often when, for example, nahó:tv? 'what' appears as a one-wor̀d question following an afiswer or any type of statement, its function is that of a request for repetition. This can be true for other one-word questions, such as to 'how (much)' in (7.20 $Q_{R}$ ). Usually, this function implies that the questioner has not at all or only partially understood the answer. In (7.20) however, the questioner understood the answer. Since (7.20 $\mathrm{A}_{1}$ ) is given by another person than the one requested, his request for repetition

FIGURE 7.4 . Everyday Conversation
Function IV: Request for Repetition.

WH $100.0 \%$

4
a.


Fig. 7.4 shows the distribution of question types within Function 'IV, which accounts for $3.8 \%$ of the total number of everyday questions.
implies rejection of $A_{1}$ rather than lack of uncerstanding. Once the condition of ' $X$ and only $X$ is the next one to speak' is respected, the answer is accepted (7.20 $A_{2}$ ).
(7.20)

Speaker 1:
Q ${ }_{1}$ máma, to nikanb:ru
Mama, how PRT-it-is-priced
Mama, how expensive is it? (the mattress)

Speaker 2:
$A_{1}$. tai nif* niká:yv? wakhni:nu wisk niwáhsv
that NOM-I PRT-\$t-is-(a)-kind I-bought-it five PRT-ten

* The one I bought is fifty (dollars).

Speaker 1:
$Q_{R}$. to
how
How (much)?

Speaker 3:
$A_{2}$. wisk niwáhsv nikahwístake
five PRT-ten PRT-dollar
Fifty dollars.

In different aituations, this function has different functions underlying it. In (7.20) the function underlying Function $I V$, the request for repetition, is that of rejection. It appears then that functions occur in layers, differing in degrees of abstractions. At this stage of the
'ni? is a contracted form for ne $1: ? 1$ 'NOM I'.
research, the various layers of functions will have to be suggestive rather than exhaustive. In (7.21) and (7.22), the function underlying Function IV is that of alding the questioner to enter the topic of discussion which he had not followed for various reasons. For instance, in each of (7.21) and (7.22), the questioner was previously involved in a different conversation. This latter function evidentiy entails Function IV but not vice versa. It seems also to be evident that Function IV is realized in Mohawk uniquely by unmarked WH questions.

In (7.21) the qüestioner has carried on a different conversation with another man. He hears the vomen discussing another person. Repetition of certain information is asked, with the intent of joining the conversation being held among the women. A posolble ansuer is given by one of the women, and with $1 t$, his acceptance is confirmed as a new participant within the ongoing diacussion.
(7.21) Q. úhka?
who
Who?
A. tyứn

June
June.

In (7.22) we have an example where this function of repetition Is not limited to one-word questions. Here, it is one of the women who, while conversing with her equals, overhears the men discussing some people involved in a certain type of action. She requests repetition and with it,
the permission to enter the discussion group.
(7:22) Q. uhka? ne ki:
who NOM this-one
Who is this?
A. ne kwí nOM definitely $\quad$ CLFT ? they-are-white-skinned

That is the white people.

### 7.4.5 Function V: Request for (a) Action, and/or (b) Change

of Action. A small $2.6 \%$ of question in our data take on the function

- of a request for action or change of action; see Fig. 7.5 on the following page. The request for (a) action is introduced by (i) WH or (ii) whimperative question rypes. An acceptable response in respect to whimperatives is verbal, whereas in respect to impositives (a subcategory of whimperatives) or WH questions, it is more often non-verbal than verbal. In fact, if a request is supposed to function as a request for (b) change of action, more often than not an answer is expected. The question types that fall into this category are disjunctive impositives that start on the surface with kätu $k v$ 'or $Q^{\prime}$, and WH questions.
7.4.5.1 WH Questions. Request for action, Function $V$ (a), can be aignalled by any of the WH morphemes. In (7.23), for example, the questioner really wants to see where his child got hurt. The underlying function could be interpreted as: 'Let me see where you got hurt'.

FIGURE 7.5 Everyday Conversation
Function V: Request for Action and/or Change of Action.


Fig. 7.5 shows the distribution of question types within Function $V$, which accounts for $2.6 \%$ of the total number of everyday questions.
(7.23) Q. to na?áav
how PRT-1t-happens
Let me see, what is happening?
A. (The child shows her injured hand to the questioner.)

Request for change of action, Function $V(b)$, can of ten be slgnalled by
WH morphemes also. In (7.24) the mother demands of her daughter in the next room to be leas noisy:
(7.24) Q. terés nishatyérha
: Theresa PRT-you-are-doing
Theresa, what are you doing?
A. (The embarrassed laughter of Thigesa is heard.)

### 7.4.5.2 Whimperative Question Types.

Whimperatives Certain 'why' questions, unlike their syntactic appearance, incite the addressee to action. In (7.25) the underlying suggestion 1s: 'Have your hair cut'. In other words, the questioner sees no reason why the addressee has not had his hair cut. His challenge to action demands a fustifying answer. Yet, the non-committal answer seems to satisfy the questioner.
(7.25)
Q. oh nutyé:rv
tsi yah tesatenú? käru WH PRT-it-is-(a)-matter that not you-have-your-hair-cut Why don't you have your hair cut?
A. tó:ka
'I-don't known'
I don't know.

Impositive Impositives act like commands. Their functions are twofold. In (7.26) the fddressee is to execute a non-verbal act. In (7.27) the answerer 18 to change his action.

In polite speech, Function $V(a)$ is often introduced by a modal verb, as in (7.26).


Ostúha sakanúhsanoste
a-1ittle-bit again-house-is-cool it is a little bit cool in the house.
kátu kv impositives whose subject 1 a first person plural or a second person singular seem to function as requests for a change of action, Function $V^{\prime}(b)$. In (7.27), the visitor has just agreed to be taped in conversation with my consultant. The visitor's request really means: 'Let us gay something else now'. The question thus takes on the function of a polite command for a change of action. In (7.27) the change requested pertains to the verbal activity. More specifically, a change in the theme is requested:
(7.27)

Visitor:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { Q. kátu kv knahó:tv?k } & \text { vtyeni:ru } \\
\text { or } \quad Q^{\prime} \text { SOME-PRT-?-is-(a)-thing-this-one we-wili-say-it } \\
\text { Or shall we say something? }
\end{array}
$$

Consultant:
A. (hv) o, nyaté:ku $\quad$ ki $\quad$ atyathro:riyate
(yes) oh, different-thing that-one we-could-talk-of-thing
(Yes) Oh, the kind of thing we could talk about
$\begin{array}{lll}\text { tai, whniseri:yo wihi } & k i & \text { wat } \\ \text { that it-is-a-nice-day that-one } & \text { TAG }\end{array}$ is that the weather is nice, couldn't we?

Notice that the answerer accepts the request for a change of theme at the same time as she proposes quite a popular topic for discussion.
7.4.6 Function VI: Request for Delay. A set of ques-
tions ( $0.8 \%$ ) and their answers in the data insert themselves between a question and its answer: $\left[Q-\left[Q_{D} A_{D}\right]-A\right]$; see Fig. 7.6 on the following page. Such inserted questions--termed 'insertion sequence' by Sacks (1972)--are used in a conversation to delay a previously requested answer. The speaker asks for some information evidently needed in order to answer the question. Thus not any question can follow another question. Those that do follow, serve the purpose of eventually answering the initially: asked question, (Schegloff (1973), cited by Ann Weiser (1975: 649-660)).

In (7.28 $Q_{D}$ ), the primary function is that of a request for

FIGURE 7.6 Everyday Conversation
Function VI: Request for Delay.

DSJ 100.07



Fig. 7.6 shows the distribution of question types within Function VI, which accounts for $0.8 \overline{\text { of }}$ the total number of everyday questions.
delay. A secondary fynction is, however, also present--the request for the specification of some given information.
(7.28) Q. úhka? réshu káti núwa ne ríanete
who else then now NOM they-stand-up
Who then now are the elders
onuhsatokvhti:ke
at-church
of the church?
$Q_{D}$. né kv tyokwanúhsote
NOM $Q$ our-house-is-standing
You mean at our house?
$A_{D}$. him
yes
Yes.
A. sakîho, taohké:ri, ...

Sakiho, Tsohkeri, $\because \cdot$
Sakiho, Tsohkeri, ...
7.4.7 Function VII: Request for a Permitting Action. A small remnant ( $0.4 \%$ ) among all the question-answer pairs functions as a requeat for a permitting action, a term used by Fillmore (1973); see Fig. 7.7 on the following page. In other words, the questioner seeks for permission from the addressee to execute a certain act. In (7.29) the petitioner introduces this request by a modal verb. Hence, politeness marks

FIGURE 7.7

DSJ 100.0\%


Fig. 7.7 shows the distribution of question types within Function VII, which accounts for $0.4 \%$ of the total number of everyday questions.
his request. Oddly enough, a polite answer is in the form of a command-see Fillmore (1973: 112). The answer in (7.29), in the form of a command, refuses to grant the permission. In this situation, evidently the refusal is a polite way of asking the guest not to be disturbed by the host passing by.
Q. Ihsehrë? kv a?é:rv á:kehte you-want $Q$ away I-should-stand Do you want me to get out of the way?
A. yah, yah tóhsả
no, 'don't' No, don't mpve.
7.5 Functions Within Classroom Conversations. The questions we have observed within the clasaroom setting come under the following functional categories.

1. Request for proof of knowledge
2. Request for confirmation
3. Request for information
4. Request for delay
5. Request for repetition
6. Request for (a) further explanation and/or (b) further conversation
7. Request for imitation
8. Request for (a) action and/or (b) change of action
9. Request for politeness

The nine functions are listed according to their respective frequencies, with the most frequent in first position, and the least frequent in last. In Mohawk classroom conversation, we are not surprised to find that the functions of questions, as well as their relative frequencies, differ from those found in everyday conversations. Although we occasionally make general statements regarding classroom functions, it is to be understood that our observations were taken from one setting, and hence, may or may not be applicable on a larger scale to other Mohawk classroom settings.

The above paradigm of classroom functions suggests the following differences with respect to everyday versus classroom question-answer usage:
(1) Functions II-VI and VIII underlie the act of inquiring in classroom as well as in everyday situations. The Function of requesting a permitting action (7.4.7) has been observed only in everyday conversations, while proof of knowledge (7.5.1), imitation (7.5.7), and politenesa (7.5.9) seem to be requested in classroom questions exclusively.
(1i) In both situations--everyday and the classroom--the major bulk of the occurring questions come under one but not the same functional category; for the comparative frequencies, see Fig. 7.17 at the end of this chapter. That is, in the case of everyday, the most frequent questions (with 67.07 of the total) functioned as requests for information (7.4.1), whereas in the case of the classoom, the most frequent questions (with 77.0\%) functioned as requesta for proof of knowledge (7.5.1). In everday conversation, each of the remaining functions were realized at or below
the frequency of approkimately $16 \%$, and in the school classroom, at or .below the frequency of approximately 8\%. (For instance, at school, information was requested at a $6.9 \%$ frequency rating.)

### 7.5.1 Function I: Request for Proof of Knowledge.

Questions observed in the classroom most frequentiy (77.0\%) served the function of requesting proof of knowledge. Most of them were unmarked (91.0\%), either (i) WH questions, or occasionally (ii) disjunctive questions; (i1i) $2.8 \%$ were conditional questions, and (iv) $6.2 \%$ were quiz questions in form and function. See Fig. 7.8 on the following page, At first sight, (i) and (11) appeared to request information. However, by examining their usage more* closely, it became evident that the requested information was already known by the questioner. Obviously, their true function was not that of an information request. Proof of knowledge instead was requested.
7.5.1.1 WH Questions. More than $50 \%$, of them were 'what' questions, as in the following example.

Teacher:
Q.
nahó: tv?
ki:kare*
PRT-7-1s-(a)-kind ,this-one-1tt-is-in
What is this in it? (the picture)
*ki:kare is a contracted form of ki 1:kare 'this-one it-is-in'

FIGURE 7.8 Classroom Conversation
Function I: Request for Proof of Knowledge.

DSJ*
15.2\%

WH
75.8\%

CND
2.8\%

QUZ
6.2\%


Fig. 7.8 shows the distribution of question types within Function $I$, which accounts for 77.0\% of the total number of classroom questions.


$$
(7.30)
$$

Student:

## $A_{1}$. ohnfhare

grape
A grape.

Teacher:
$\begin{aligned} \text { R. } & \text { yah } \\ & \text { no } \\ & \text { No. }\end{aligned}$

Student:
$A_{2}$. (silence)

Teacher:
A $_{3}$. kahvtakéha

blueberry
A blueberry.

The teacher definitely does not ask for new information, otherwise she could not have provided the correct answer herself, as in ( $7.30 \mathrm{~A}_{3}$ ). It follows that this and almost every unmarked question uttered by the teacher serve the sole purpose of testing the student's knowledge.

### 7.5.1.2 Disjunctive Questions. These question types

 are used to a. much lesser degree than WH questions. Take, for example, the following yes-no question:Teacher:
Q. yakoyó?te kv sa?nistv́ha
she-works Q your-mothèx
Is your mother working?
(7.31)

Student:
A. hm
yes
Yes.

In (7.30), as in ${ }^{\text {and }}$ questions in general, the abillty to produce an anover Fis teaced; in (7.31), as in yeo-no questions in general, comprehension is verified,
'7.5.1.3 Conditional Quentiont. Tecting was also rea1fzẹd by marked quantion types. The conditional question in (7.32) vas set up by the teacher, in order to provide the otudent with an hypothetical frag as a gulde in hio oearch for the correcte anover.
(7.32)

Teacher:


Student:
$\Lambda_{1}$. cleô:?a
1ftele-girl
A Itecle etrl.

3
(7.32)

Teacher:
$R_{1}$. yah
no
No.

## Student:

$A_{2}$ : raksá: ?a
11ttle-boy
A littile boy.

Teacher:
$\mathrm{R}_{2}$. The
me-(co)-her
My

## Student;

$A_{3}$. Khe7ky: ?a
my-1ittle-aloter
My little oloter.

The question-anawer exchange proves that the teacher' a good-willed attempt to guide the otudent's reoponse was not very succeosful at first. The reason for thia failure might have been partially due to the structural complexicy of the queotion, partially to the propositional content of the question, or to extralinguistic factors. None of the conditional question types, when uoed in clase, resulted in gatiofactory reaponses; this is not the case, hovever, then they are used in everyday convergations.

### 7.5.1.4 Quiz Questions. Quiz questions in general

proved to be simpler in structure and clearer in proposition. Notice, that in (7.33) the questioned constituent is deleted. Intonation is nonfinal. A nominal, one-word answer, is expected.
*
Teacher:
Q. sa?niatv́ha ó:ni tyé:teru wảhi tâhnu Your mother also is at home, isn't ghe, and

Student:

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
\text { A. } & \mathrm{hm}, & \text { rainiha* } \\
\mathrm{hm}, & \text { my-father } \\
\mathrm{Hm}, & \text { my father } .
\end{array}
$$

The teacher knows the whole community. The answer is thus clearly known by hex. The question herewith turns into an instrument for testing. of course, the testing function of the above question is not only evident to the teacher, but also to the student.
7.5.2 Function II: Request for Confirmation. In class as in everyday conversations, the second most important function of questions observed by us was that of requesting confirmation (8.1\% of the total number of questions); see Fig. 7.9 on the following page. This function in class, however, was one-half as frequent as in everyday conversations,
*The proper form here should be rake?niha 'my-father'.

FIGURE 7.9 Clessroom Conversation
Function II: Request for Confirmation.

| DSJ | $26.3 \%$ |
| :--- | ---: |
| ECL | 5.37 |
| RAT | $5.3 \%$ |
| QCL | $5.3 \%$ |
| TGC | 47.47 |
| TGX | 10.48 |



Fig. 7.9 shour the dibtriburlon of quabtion typeo rithin Function II, which accounce for $8.1 \%$ of the cotal nubber of clasaroon questione.
though their question types were mostly the same: (1) tag questions, and to 'a lesser extent, queclaratives, ${ }^{7}$ (ii) disjunctive questions; (ili) echo questions, and (iv) rhetorical questions. The lower frequency in the classrom can easily be explainedn terma of the interrelationship between participanta. In everyday conversȩtions, any participant--whether questioner or answerer-occasionally used Function II, for example, in the form of a tag question. ${ }^{8}$ Confirmation was thus sought from one another. In the classroom, the use of this Function seemed to be the prerogative of the questioner (teacher) only. The studeñts celdom, if ever, asked questions themselves. It appears that the mutual requesting of confirmation fust was not appropriate at school. Now let us look at the different realizations of Function II.

### 7.5.2.1 Tag Questions and Queclarative questions. The

 wahi or kv tags seemed to function most often as confirmation requests. In St. Regio, the kv tag was more frequently used than the wahi tag. We, therefore, shall start with a kv tag example that ask for a verbal confirmation.Teacher:
Q. káhi, ne kv tewanatukwa kv thi
fruit, NOM $Q$ we-call-it TAG this-one Fruit--is that what we call it, eh?
(7.34)

Student:
A. sewahyó: wane
apple
An apple.

Teacher:
Ap. sewahyó: wane apple An appie.

The reading of the above question 18 , in fact, that of a queclarative reading: 'We don't really call it a fruit, do we?'. The answer now makes sense; 'apple' hence implies: 'I confirm that we don't call it fruit but apple'. The tag and the queclarative reading of the above quegtion reinforced the function of confirmation which, once appropriately interpreted, reaulted in a reoponse that received approval by the teacher.

There have been tag queationo of the type 5.3.9.1 that did not initially receive a verbal confirmation answer. The answer in (7.35 $\mathrm{A}_{2}$ ) was non-verbal, in the form of an afflrmative nod. Yet, after further explanation, the teacher later asked the atudent to repeat the statement in (7.35 $Q_{C}$ ).
(7.35)

Teacher:

> Q. takhro:xi, ôh niyutyérha you-teli-me, WH PRT-she-is-doing
, Tell me, what is ohe dolng?

Student:

$$
A_{1} \cdot \quad \text { (silence) }
$$

(7.35)

Teacher:

```
QC. eksá:?a yakowená:note wáh1 ...
little-girl she-is-reading TAG ...
The little giri is reading, ism't she?
```


## Student:



The yah kv tag question type 5.3 .9 .4 , when requesting confirmation hlways seemed to follow a atatement that contained a negative proposition dr entailed a negative one which was not really expected, as in (7.36). Notlce that the tag question follows an information statement. previously unknown to the teacher.
(7.36)

Student:
St. onhưhsa oswvearáke ukwa:t1
egs on-floor , I-threw-it
I threw the egg on the floor....

## Teacher:

Q. yäh kv tesekú:?u
not: $Q$ you-1iked-taste
Didn't you like the taste?

## Student:

A. yah
no
No.
4

Notice the negative confirmation response. Evidently this type of question always requests a response of this nature. In class, a verbal response alternated with a gestural one.

### 7.5.2.2 Disjunctive Questions. Again the teacher was

 requesting confirimation in (7.37 $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ ). Interestingly enough, the request followed a true information request, $Q_{1}$. This makes us suspect that the ${ }^{\text {. }}$ use of many of the Function II questions werc in direct response to preceding true information questions or statementi.(7.37)

Teacher:
$Q_{1}, \quad$ na:ti, $\quad \begin{aligned} & \text { kni:ce? }\end{aligned}$
Nattie, and-NoM-you

Nattie, and you? (What time did you get up this morning?)

Student':
A $_{1}$. aha?te:ku
eight
Eight ( $0^{\prime} \mathrm{clock}$ ).

Teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Q }_{2} \cdot \text { sha?té:ku kv niyohwistá:?e } \\
& \text { eight } \quad \text { Q pRT-it-strikes-bell } \\
& \\
& \text { At eight o'clock? }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Student:

8

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{2} . & \text { han } \\
& \text { yes } \\
& \text { Yeo. }
\end{aligned}
$$

[^6]The question previously asked is completely deleted in (7.37 $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ ). This type of ellipsis has been frequently observed in class, and approximately two-thirds less frequently in everyday conversations. The teacher explicitly formulated the question the first, time, but as she continued to interrogate the different pupils with the same question, she ceased repeating the already given question material. Instead, she called upon each different student by name, indicating by the use of the conjunction particle 'and' the link between the preceding discourse context and the one to follow.
7.5.2.3 Echo Questions. Another instance was observed In (7.38), where the request for confirmation entailed a preceding true information request and answer. In this case, however, confirmation was requested in the form of an echo question, specifying the constituent under question.

Teacher:


I wonder, how much (money he has)?

Student:
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { A }_{1} . & \text { skahwista } \\ \text { one-dollar } \\ & \text { one dollar. }\end{array}$
(7.38)

Teacher:

| $Q_{2}$ | skahwista |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | one-dollar $Q$ |
|  | one dollar? |

Student:
$A_{2} \quad \mathrm{hm}$
yes
צев.
7.5.2.4 Rhetorical Questions. As in everyday conversations, the questioner does not expect any answer. In everyday situations, the addressee still might overtly confirm the question's presuppositional and propositional content. However, in class, the students nether verbally contradicted nor confirmed the teacher's assumptions: In (7.39), the teacher is pointing at a teacher in a picture:
(7.39)

Teacher:
tsi sanikurha kv ne naho:tv?
that you-forget $Q$ NOM PRT-?-is-(a)-thing

Are you forgetting what that is?

Teacher:
A. yakorihunyá:ni
ohe-teaches-them
She is teaching.

The anawer famediately follows the question. The atudents' silence takes
on the significance of confirmation, as they believe that the teacher knows best. We wonder if such a functional use of questions, in some cases, does not give the teacher opportunity to tranamit prefudices which may not necessarily correspond to actual facts.

### 7.5.3 Function III: Request for Information. There

 have been occasional questions observed in the classroom that, without doubt, served the purpose of eliciting information ( $6.8 \%$ ); see Fig. $7 / 10$ on the following page. There were equally as many (1) unmarked wh questions as there were (if) unmarked disjunctive questions.
### 7.5.3.1 WH Questions. In $Q_{1}$ of the previous example

 (7.37), the teacher really could not have known what time the students would get up in the morning. We suspect, however, that ultimately this question served the purpose of testing knowledge. The teacher's intent was to find out if the atudent was capable of answering her question in Mohawk. Though a true information question, ft'f fundamentally served the purpose of testing.Nevertheless, some questions were typical information questions without an underlying quiz intention, as was shown to be the case in (7.37). For instance, at the end of the class, the teacher handed out some candies. Suddenly she realized'that she might be short of them. Therefore, this following question (7.4.0) ensued:

FIGURE 7.10
Classroom Conversation
Function III: Request for Information.

DSJ . $50.0 \%$
WH $50.0 \%$


Fig. 7.10 shows the distribution of question types within Function III, which accounts for $6.8 \%$ of the total number of classroom questions.

Teacher:
Q. to $n$ n:tgu shé:ku
how PRT-you still
How many are you still, (that have not got a candy)?

Students: (several together)
A. kayé:ri
four
Four.
7.5.3.2 Disjunctive Questions. We noticed the same
difficulty with their functional content here, as in 7.4.1. The teacher 5 requested some student to assert whether he had hit the microphone or not. The information she was seeking, however, could have another underlying function: that of requesting confirmation. This latter function would occur if the questioner were more certain than not of the assertive nature of the proposition. We would need to have more information about the social context, in order to decide for Function III alone, or for its co-occurrence with Function II. In any case, one thing is clear: information about the propositional content is sought.
(7.41)

Teacher:
Q. q:ae? kv wa?tesu:ko you $Q$ you-hit-it
Is it you that hit it (the microphone)?

Student:
A. (ailence)

### 7.5.4 Function IV: Request for Delay. A few questions

 and their answers (2.6\%) operated as insertion sequences requesting a delay in a previously demanded answer. Those delay questions could be either (i) yes-no questionc, or (ii) wh questions; see Fig. 7.11 on the following page. They were used by the speakers to obtain more needed information, in order to correctly'answer the question.7.5.4.1 Yes-No Questions. Most of the delay questionanswer sequences in the claseroom asked for assertion of one of the elements requested.
(7.42)

Teacher:
Q. vskwéni kv vhsekhröri oh niyutyérha
you-will-be-able $Q$ you-will-tell-me WH she-is-doing-it Whll you be able to tell me
thi:
that-one
what she is doing?

Student:

| $Q_{D}$ | yeksá: ?a (kv) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | little-girl ( Q$)$ |
|  | The little girl? |

Teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{D} \text {. yah se? ta* eksa:?a, té:ky } \\
& \text { not definitely I-think little-girl that-one } \\
& \text { I definitely do not think that it is a little girl. }
\end{aligned}
$$

ta is a contracted form of tóka 'I-think'.

FIGURE 7.11 Classroos Conversation,
Function IV: Request for Delay.


Fig. 7.11 shors the discxibution of question types within Tumetion IV, which accounto Eor $2.6 \%$ of the total number of clegoroon gunotione.
(7.42)

Scudent:

$$
A_{1} \text { (olicnco) }
$$

. Tcacher:
$A_{2} \cdot$ yenoharényuc
ohe-vashes

She is waching.

Student:
$A_{3}$. yenoharényus
she-izashes
She to maohing.

The compler quection of the tencher ita in reality a request for an andrex: "You cell ms: "thoe 10 ohe doing?" Even after having rew ceived edditioncl information, the ntucont anotercd only after the eeacher hed provided him whth the corrcet reaponoo. Eallure to anstrer questions
 tion.
7.5.4.2 Wh Quectiong. The ocudenc in (7.43) was in Fact malting a deal with the' tescher: "Te you cnotror my question, then $I$. cheil anowor youra'. "A ésnal reoponoe tha given: yec. it did not actually chotrer the teacherin indtial question.

Teacher:


Whose does it growt
s
Student:
$Q_{D}$
nahó: tv?
PRT-?-1a-(a)-kind
What?

Teacher:

| $A_{D} \quad$ né $k i$ | $k i: k v$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| NOM this-one this-one |  |  |
|  | This one. | (pointing) |

Student:
A. niyohutésha etrawberry
A strawberry.

7.5.5 Function V: Requeat for Repetition. A sma11 set of questions (2.2\%)--a11 WH questiono-anrved as requests for repetition; gee Fig. 7.12 on the following page. In everyday conversations, the Function requesting repettion implied underiying fumctiono pertaining to the participanta or ta the topic, (see 7.1.4). Not so in the classroom; there, the function operated either for the sole purpose of repeating an utterance not understood by the teacher (7.44); ox to remind the student that he was suppoaed to apeak in Mohawk. (7.45); or eloc to olgnal to the atudent that 'complece' uterances are required (7.46).

## (7.44)

Teacher:
Lúd, ka? nú wáre thi
Loula, which pRT-iplace he-goes that-one litcle-boy
Louís, where is thís little boy going?

## FIGURE 7.12 Clasoroom Conversation

## Function V: Raguest for Repetition.



Fig. 7.12 show the distribution of question types withtn Function $V$, which accounto for $2.2 \%$ of the total number of claboroom queotions.

## (7.44)

Student:

$$
A_{1} \cdot \quad \text { (not undcrataridable) }
$$

## Teacher:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
Q_{R} \cdot & \text { nahô:cv? } \\
& \text { pRT-i-1sm(a)-kind } \\
& \text { What? }
\end{array}
$$

student:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { A }_{2} . \quad \text { toil kako:oere } \\
& \text { that orall-grocexy-otore } \\
& \text { To that anal grocery store. }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Teacher:

Ap. tai kaló:sere , hiv
that oms11-grocory-atore, yob
To then om all grocery tore yo.

Again, in the neat two examples, we dee the pattern of layers of function axtoing. The Funcetca of acpetithon had another underlying function in (7.65), that of pooling in Fohergis and in (7.46), that of speaking in 'complots' utterances.
(7.45)

Teacher:
Q. to nl:tou nakwe:ku
how primes Nom-all
Hov many are you in all?

Student: "

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{A}_{1} . & \text { Eave } \\
& \text { five } \\
& \text { FIve. }
\end{array}
$$


(7.46)

Student:

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{3} \cdot & \text { teayć:rı } \\
& \text { Kour } \\
& \text { Four. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Teacher:
$\mathrm{R}_{2} . \quad$ tos kohys:tu
that 1 t-is-anked
Grade.

Studenc:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Lambda_{4} \text {." tol kohyá:tu rátotho } \\
& \text { that: te-is-inrted he-uges } \\
& \text { grode be jotn. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Function $V$ mas sealteed tn the above crnmplea with a 'what' question. In (7. $36 \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{R}}$ ) the teacher requanted ecpetition of the nev and the given (proouppooed) insomationt Thes incent nocend to be a cypteal school functoz, indicnetag chat teachero ofecu ware not arame of some of the most

7.5.6 Function VI: Reguose Cos ( 3 ) Fupchor Explanation, and/or (b) Eusthus Converontion, Ansug the $1.7 \%$ of quentions requesting (a) fumther caphanction, or (b) furblin converbathon, one-hnif of them wase (1) tag quontons, and tho othea hatr (it) umersed you-no and wh




FIGURE 7.13 Classroom Conversation
Function VI: Request for Furthex 'Explanation' and/or
Furcher Conversation.

| DSJ | $25.0 \%$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| WH | $25.0 \%$ |
| TGY | $50.0 \%$ |



Fig. 7.13 show the diatribution of quection typeo within Function VI, which accounta for $1.7 \%$ of the totel number of cilccuroon quastions.
specify co-occurrence ruleo in the following examples.

酎
7.5.6.1 Tag Questiong. The yah kv tag question type
5.3.9.1 wao the only tag eype uged in the clposroom, serving Function VI. yah ky 'no eh?' ao a one-vord question, in cueryday as well as in classroom conversationa, unually requesta explanation. In (7.47) the teacher intended to request explanation from the atadent-fonction VI (a)--for the purpose of fivolving him in further Mohavk conver fation-Function VI (b). Thus, wheze Functions VI (a) and (b) comoccur within a one-word yah ky tag question, Funchion II is definitely excluded.

Teacher:


Is he laughing, that one in the picture?

## Student:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
A_{1} \cdot & \text { yahtv } \\
& \text { 'no-indeed' } \\
& \text { Definitely not. }
\end{array}
$$

## Teacher:

| $Q_{2}$ | yäh | kv |
| ---: | :--- | :--- |
|  | no | $Q$ |
|  | No, | eh? |

Q ${ }_{3}$ kâti nihatyérha
therefore PRT-he-is-dolng
Therefore, what is he doing?
(7.47)

Student:
$A_{2}$. tehasvthos
he-is-crying
Hc in crying.

Ic' ohould be noticed that the habitual function(s) of a yah kv one-word queetion 13 meakened if tmondacely followed by a question that apecifies the type of anower requented, $00 \ln \left(7.47 Q_{3}\right)$. In using $Q_{2}$ and $Q_{3}$ oucceoolvely, the ceacher changed the requeato for further explanation and converoation in $Q_{2}$, inco a request for proof of knowledge in $Q_{3}$. In everyday converoation, it in up to the anowerer to decide how to respond and diroct the ongoing conversation. In the obove amaple, the teacher clearly was controlling the couroc of coavoroation. Hercby, language functions implied"in the chotee of linguiotic formo are deprived of their presuppoced quality as dcocrabed in 7.4.3.1.
7.5.6.2 Unmarked QueatLono. Ve shal, give only one
example-a Will quoocton-me filuotrate a queotion thoce use in the classroom bervce ao Function VI (a), a requese for further catplanation. $\Lambda$ btudent told the clace how he hod thrown an egg on the floor at home. A truc information queotion, $Q_{1}$, wao the immadiace response of his teacher, which was then followed by $Q_{2}$, a queation acleing for' Eurther eaplanation,

Teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& Q_{1} . \text { obwhara:ke }(k v) \text { eh } \quad \text { reoáti } \\
& \text { on-floor }(Q) \text { thare you-threw-it } \\
& \text { On the floor you threw it? }
\end{aligned}
$$

Student:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
A_{1} \cdot & h v \\
& \text { yes } \\
\text { Yes. }
\end{array}
$$

$i$

## Teacher:

$\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ : oh nutye: iv
WII PRX-it-is-the-reason , Why?

Student:

$$
A_{2} \text { (ailence) (laughter in class) }
$$

The student was not responding as requented. The laughter of the students. perhapa intimidated him. Sllence thus functions here as a correction of presuppooitions hesd by the teachor, (oce 6.2.3.4).

17
7.5.7 Function VII: Requeot for Imitation. Only in
riclassroom conversations have we obocrved a fers questions that acted as requests for indtation. ( $0.8 \%$ ); see Fig. 7.14 on the following page. In our data, (1) yes-no questions, and (id) vhimperativos are asociated with Function VII. They will be explicated reopectively in (7.49) and (7.50).

### 7.5.7.1 Yes-No Quesciong. The followng (7.49 $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ ) is

 uacd by che teacher ao a moano of tutoring one of hor otudents. Ito function is, anong othexs, that of requesting imitacion, Imitation, in turn, servea the puxpose of acquiring nev material:
## FIGURE 7.14 Classxoom Conversation

Function VII: Request for Imitation.

'
Fig. 7.14 shows the diatxibution of question cypen withtn Function VIT, which accounts for $0.8 \%$ of the total number of clasuroom questions.

## (7.49)

Teacher:
Q ${ }_{1}$ nahó:tv? thi yahéstrohwe avv́:ke
PRT-2-1s-(a)-kind that-one they-put-it in-bady-of-water Whet do they put in the body of water?

## Student:

A $_{1} .$| ohnéthanu |
| :--- |
| water |
| Wator. |

Teacher:

| $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ | â: ?are (kv) |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | net | $(\mathrm{Q})$ |

A net?

## Student:

$A_{2}$. álare
not
A net.

The otudent correctly interpreted the teacher! $\sigma^{+} Q_{2}-$ a simple question this tima-no a request for initation.
7.5.7.2 Whimperatives. The comples question in (7.50) was Interpretcd by the student as a comand for inftation: 'Danny, say: "The litcle ghrl reado"' Conoequently, he lmitated the teachor's underlying atatement. in ract, thio function could be a aubcategory of Function VIIt, a xequest for action. Since the action in a very particular - one--verbalization-wa hava decided to oet up another category.
$(7.50) \quad 1$
Teacher:

yakowana: note
ohe-igmaeading
io reading'?

## Student:

| A. | ckrá:?a | yakowaná:note |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1ittle-girl | she-is-reading |
|  | The little | 1 is reading |

### 7.5.8 Function VIII: Requeat for (a) Action, and/or.

(b) Change of Action. Only $0.4 \%$ of the clasoroon queations took on the function of a request for (a) action, and (b) change of action; ${ }^{9}$ see Fig. 7.15 on the folloning page. Without ane arception, chece Function VIII requearo all occurred in the fom of impoaitives. The impooltive in (7.51), for cranple, wa uttered at a moment when ocoe otudento ocarted to whitoper In English. The teachox vas requesting o very paxtlcular action from theoc otudentn: 'There io no roacon why you should talk in Englioh; don't tall: is English'. Function VIII (a) 'Don't calk In English' entallo VIII (b) 'routs in Indian'. In fact, her nort utterance-a comond-made explicit this lattor function. Function vili (b), lmplicit in the impositive questlon, to heremith refnforced.

```
FIGURE 7.15
```

Clasoroom Conversation
Function VIII: Requant for Action and/or Change of Action.

Wim 100:0\%

(7.51)

Teacher:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Q. oh nucyétry toi cyortif:oha tahoatátei is } \\
& \text { Wh PrT-it-is-(a)-mater that in-Enclioh you-cpoke-it } \\
& \text { Why did you opoak'in Englioh? }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Student:

A. (ationce)
., Teacher:
,-
Comand. ukwehuvenćho talkhrô:ri

- 'In-Indian' you-tell-me-it

Tell ma in Indian!

### 7.5.9 Function IX: Requear for Politeness. Again,

 only 0.47 of the quention data cones under chis function, that of a requent for politencoo; dec Fig. 7.15 on the folloring page. Politeness io not often requected in clasis, though it might be if the claas were larger and potentially more unculy. In overyday convdrcacion, we overheard a pareat pake a comand to one of hio childsea: 'Say: "Thank you"'! At school, the teacher rominded the student, in the forn of a wh question, that the dituation requeded a police verbea reoponse (7.52). The tray fin which polfteness in requested reinforces the ececher-pupil relationship. Secaingly now infomation io ooughe by the otvdent. In actual fact, the teachar lo inctructing tho otudent in the ectquete of potiteneas. .
## FIGURE 7.16 Classroom Conversation

Function IX: Request for Politeness.


Fig. 7.16 shows the distribution of question types within Function IX, which accounts for 0.47 of the total number of classroom questions.
Q. . nahó:tv? wahsi:ru

PRT-?-is-(a)-kind yoư-would-say-it
What would you say?

Student:
A. nyá:wv
'thank-you'
Thank you.
7.6 Summary. In closing this chapter, we have shown
above that an analytical approach to functions of speech act is posalible; it is also desirable. We do not claim to have dealt with the tolality of speech functions, although we have attempted to identify functions as. communicative values or intents conventionally ascribed to the act of inquiring. Functional value, in our study, was determined by criteria, i.e. answers relating to the functional content of questions, enabling us to set up functional categories for two different speech settings: that of everyday and that of classroom conversations.

The significant difference between these speech settings was functional in nature. For the comparative distribution of functions, see Fig. 7.17 on the following page. In the case of everyday conversation, the major bulk of questions embodied the intent 'request for information'. 'In the classroom, the greater portion of questions operated as 'requests for proof of knowledge'. Imitation and politeness were also sought for in the classroom, but not so in everyday conversation. Permitting action'

Comparison of Function Types and Their Relative Frequencies.



FUNCTIONAL CATEGORY
was found only in everyday conversational
${ }^{*}$ Differences between the various functions have been discussed In social and linguistic terms. Patterns have been emerging that have: predictable qualities. In everyday and classroom conversations, for exampile, conditional questions always, and unmarked questions usually, correlate to their respective Functions $I$; rhetorical questions to the function of confirmation; and tag questions either to the function of confirmation, or to the function of further explanation and/or further conversation. In unmarked and tag questions, social factors must be taken into consideration in order to render the pattern truly predictable.

Language is definitely ascribed different communicative value in everyday communication than it is in classroom conversation. If the latter setting is as well to be a language-teaching situation, we must ask ourselves exactly what is being taught. Is it words alone, or sentences; or is it the two within the discourse? If conversation is to be exercised or acquired appropriately and adequately, it should be taught in a manner characteristic to that found in everyday situations.



## FOOTNOTES TO CHAPTER SEVEN

1. In recent years, a new interest for language functions has flourished in linguistic circles. Speech functions in particular have been discussed in diverse terms by such linguists as, for example, Fillmore (1973), R. Lakoff (1973), Green (1974), Morgan-(1975), and last but not least, Labov (1972).
2. This concluding statement should not mislead the reader into believing a complete absence of theoretically oriented material in the ethnography of speaking. Lately, some remarkable progress has been made in this respect. For further information on this subject, I highly recommend the articles of J. Irvine and A. Salmond, in R. Bauman and J. Sherzer (eds.) (1974), Explorations in the Ethnography of Speaking. However, we have to be open to the fact that we are still far from a uniffed theory of speaking.
3. 'requést' stands for the performative hypersentence: 'I ask/request you to tell me'. By reducing the hypersentence to its nucleous verb 'request', we hope to simplify the reading of the paradigm.
4. The function of wâhi 'TAG' as described in 5.2.9.2, is similar to that of 'you know' in English, or 'tu sais' In French. It'is extensively used by some speakers, just as 'tu sais', for example, is much used by certain individuals.
5. Diajunctive questions include the following types: ' $X$ or not- $X$ ', and ' $X$ or $X$ '. Yes-no questions are a variant of the ' $X$ or not- $X$ ' type, Whenever this variant is found within a functional category to the exclusion of all the other disjunctive types, we shall discuss it under the specific label of 'yes-no questions'. However, it should be noted that these yes-no questions are always accounted for in the figures under the more general label, 'disjunctive questions'.
6. In adult-child verbal interaction, the adult asks questions twice as frequently (or even more) as the child. The frequency. depends, of course, on the sityation; nevertheless, adults do seemingly ask more questions than children. The same phenomenon has been observed in dialogues among children who did not know one another. In the following example,
the older (Speaker 1) Is questioning the younger (Speaker 2).. Age thus is an important factor in question-answer usages.

Speaker 1:


Aren't yow afraid that you would accidentally harm yourself someday?

## Speaker 2:

$$
A_{1} \cdot \text { yah }
$$

no
No.

Speaker 1:

$$
\begin{aligned}
Q_{2} . & \text { yáh } \\
& \text { no } \\
& \text { no } \\
& \text { No, eh? }
\end{aligned}
$$

Speaker 2:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{2} \cdot \text { yah ne taú:tu } \\
& \text { not NOM it-could-be-possible } \\
& \text { Impossible. }
\end{aligned}
$$

One of the two boys obviously tries to keep a conversation going. The two have met for the first time. Since the questioner is a few years older than the answerer, he is the one responsible for the conversational outcome. With $Q_{2}$, he is asking for further explanation on the one hand, and inviting the addressee' to continue dialoguing with him on the other.
a
7. Although the queclarative type is less frequent than the disfunctive one, we put the latter in second position. The queclarative is going to be exemplified together with the most frequent--tag question type-in one and the same example.
8. See example (7.8), which is really a response of a third party to the preceding question in (7.7).
9. Function VIII, in spite of its low frequency, has the potential for a greater periodicity. Some questions in our data were border cases and might have qualified under Function VIIt'; see, for example, the first question in (7.42). 'Yet, in consistency with' our methodology, where answers determine the function of the question, we had to dismiss them as possible Function VIII members. In (7.42), for instance, the answer was absent, until provided by the teacher in $A_{2}$. Perhaps we interpreted wrongly the following: "No, I cannot tell you'." Assuming this to be the correct interpretation, the student himself is not conveying the meaning of Function VIII to the question.

## CHAPTER EIGHT

CÓNCLUSION

The primary purpose of this dissertation originally consisted in elucidating sociolinguistic patterns underlying Mohawk questionanswer discoufse, both in everyday and classroom gettings. First, a linguistic groundwork was to be laid. This study thus began with a discussion of Mohawk interrogative surface features:
(1) the morphological composition of WH morphemes/phrases and - their variants; certain syintactic patterns of disfunctive questions.

Elements which were beyond the analytical scope are:
(i) the process of assofiating WH feature complexes to noun phrases;
(ii) the WH-movement.

We felt better equipped to analyze the derivational processes of WH questions within a semantically oriented discourse approach. Of necessity then, we elaborated a discourse framework. Questions were now viewed within the context of their respective answer, as discourse entities superordinated by:
(i) speech act conditions: the performative and deixes;
(ii) speech act preconditions (termed discourse presuppositions): shared knowledge; knowledge, motivation and power on the part of the addressee, etc.;
(ii1) focus (discourse operator): related to stress assignment, assertion, clefting, and information reduction. The theoretical frame of reference was that of generative semantics. Although it proved to be particularly well-suited to capture interrelationships between syntax and semantics, we still had to depart from it in a significant wey (see ( $3 \mathrm{il}, 111$ )) in order to account for unite larger than those of the sentence.

This framework permitted us tofexplicate Mohawk-particular structures. For example, we have suggested, firstly, that in Mohawk certain . constituents of a sentence can be clefted, such as, for example, a, verb or the negation. This finding is supportive of generative semantic claims that negation, for instance, is a higher predicate; gecondly, that In Mohawik a Wh question presupposes a definite and/or an indefinite answer. The latter $1 s$ an assertion of the questioned element and $10^{\circ}$ either implied in the definite answer, or else occure in the form of an indefinite answer. Both type of anawere are considered to be polite and acceptable by Mohawk. speakers, which makes us wonder, on the one hand, about samantic properties characterizing Wh queations in general, and the criterion of acceptability as known in Chomekian temm on the other hand. Maybe the latter is subject to value systems that differ from one speech community to the next. Finally, among the question types in Mohawk, we exposed one type not generally discussed in the linguistic literatures-the negative, biased tag question type. On the surface, ite otructure ia that of a negative diajunctive question introduced by the sentential adverb yah 'no'. Within the discourse, its meaning could beat be explained by a tag-like represen-
tation. The manner in which the semantic structure relates to the surface one is another problem to be further investigated.

We have exposed different ways of treating the discourse elements presentedabove in $(1$ - 111):' "the complex modalities of marked question types were handled in terms of discourse elements (1) and" (111); snswer patterns were accounted for informally in terms of presuppositions (i1). A domain of future research remanent is the elaboration of a unified discourse grammar. It implies, among other things:
(1) further specifications and refinement of the discourse framework and its theoretical frame of reference;
the delineation and precision of the scope of each discourse element and their interaction;
(i11) the unification of discourse repregentations and/or formalizations.

We should remind the reader, at this point, that the elaboration of a theoretical framework has been only a means to an end--the end being structures of Mohawk question-answer usage in particular, and Mohawk conversation in general. We do not deny, however, that our empirical data has necessitated the choice as well as the modification of a discourse framework. More conversational data will have to be collected to verify the rules we have come up with, and to refine and supplement them where necessary.

The thrust of the thesis thus far has been from surface to se-mantics-from language without extralinguistic context to language within extralinguistic context.

We then moved on within a socially based linguistics, where referential (iinguistic) meaning was joined with the social one, and linguistic discourse elements correlated to social features. The descriptive material of questions proved to be a valuable input to the functional study of question and answer usage. It became evident that the use of questions was subject to ackifolinguistic rules. We thus claim that sociolinguistic behaviour is orderly and systematic. Its complexity, however, has permitted us the recognition of only a limited number of patterns, and this within the domain of functions. Our target was social functions of questions in everyday and classroom verbal interaction. We believe to have pointed out well-structured correlations between question types," social factors-such as settings and participants-and functions. In everyday setting, umarked questions were usually used as requests for information, whereas at school this uage was infrequent. Instead, in the classroom proof of knowledge was most frequently requested. Here, questioning, was usually the preragative of one and the same person, the teacher; not so in everyday conversations. In the former, if ever a student dared to ask a question, its function would be that of delaying the normal question-answer interchange.

We propose a more thorough investigation of functions in classroom and everyday settings. In the Indian commities, social values and consequently speech functions are rapidly changing. If teaching methods of Mohawk as a second language are to be successful, they have to be representative of sociolinguistic behaviour that is relevant to the speech community in question.

Ultimately, we hope that this study will be of help to those who are or will be engaged in teaching their mother tongue, as a second language. We allude to, of course, Indians who have not yet had the chance to learn their Native tongue.

As an lmodiate fleld of research we dlso suggest:
(1) systematization of factors such as participants and their rôle relationship, settings, and topics; the description of a set of sociolinguiatic ruies ${ }^{1}$--relating social factors to social functions of question-answer usages; the later development of' formal discourse system whose framework encompasses linguifatic as vell as extralinguistic categorical rules of the type familiar in generative semantics. ${ }^{2}$

A taxonomic approach to a situational grammar will thus take on the form of an explanatory theory, predicting language behaviour within spcial context.

Major applications of the findings could take on value: if they were to serve as an input into methodo of firgt or oecond Native language teaching; if white teachers of Indian children were to increase their understanding of their students' sociolinguistic baclegrounds; and if Native language teachere were to become aware, firatly, of structures characterizing Mohawk language-mof linguistic and social patcerns, secondly, of more usable, pertinent everyday patterns to be taught rather than classroom patterns, and consequently, of their need to create an atmosphere more conducive to everyday speech usage.

## FOOTNOTES TO CHAPTER EIGHT

1. Context-sensitive rules might initially be written in terms of alternation and co-oćcurrence (Ervin-Tripp, 1971) where Iinguistic categories will be accompanied by rules for social selectors:
2. There is a possibility of relating discourse features in the sense of discourse entities ( $1, \mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{i}} 1$ ) to functional featuros in a formal approach, i.e. trees. Take, for example, tag question 5.3.9.1; its assertive content resembles that of its function--confirmation. The assertive aspect of questions seems to be linked to itg functional rôe in conversation. We feel that assertions, as well as functions, could be formally analyzed in a unified manner, e.g. treesrepresentations.


Akmajian, Adrian.
1970 'On Deriving Cleft Sentences from Pseudo-Cleft Sentences'. Linguistic Inguity $I, 2: 149-168$.

Alweks, Aren.
1972 Migration of the Iroquois (2nd ed).
Mohawk Nation at Akwesasne, via Rooseveltown,
New York: White Roots of Peace.

Aqvist, L.
1965 A New Approach to the Logical Theory of Interrogatives, Part I: Analysis.
Uppsala: Almquist \& Wiksell.

Austin, J.L.
1965 How to do Thinge with Words. 'J.O. Urmson', (ed.) New.York: Oxford.

Baker, C.
1970 'Notes on the Description of English Questions: The Role 'of 'an Abstract Question Morpheme', Foundatións of Language 6:197-219.

Bates, E.
'1974 'The Acquisition of Conditionals by.Italian Children', Papers from the 10th Regional Meeting. (1974)
Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 27-36.

Beatty, Johnn.
1972 Mohawik Moxphology.
Unpublished Ph.D. Dissertation.
New York: City University of New York.

Belnap, N.D.
1969 'Aqvist's Corrections-Accumalating Question-Sequences', in Davis,' J.W. ; D.J. Hockney, \& W.K. Wilson (eds.), Philosophical Logic.
Dordrecht: Reidel Pub. Co., 1969. Pp. 122-134.

Beta
1879 Contribution to a Proper Understanding of the OKA QUESTION; and a Help to its Equitable and Speedy Settiement. Montréal: N.O. Greene. (Original Grants in Appendix)

Bische1, F.
1974 A Study in Convergation Analysis.
Ph.D. Dissertation. Claremont Graduate Schơool.

Boggs, Stephen T.
1972 'The Meaning of Questions' and Narratives to Hawailan Children', In Cazden, G.B. et al., 1972. pp. 299-327.

Bolinger, D.
'1957 'Interrogative Structures of American English: The Direct Question', Amerifn Dialect Society No. 28.
Undversity of Alabama: University of Alabama Press.

Bonvillain, Nancy, \& Beatrice Francis.
1971 Mohawk-English Dictionary: Part I. St. Regis: St. Regis Mohawk Tribal Coumcil \& St. Regis Band Council. 1973 Mohawk Lessons.

St. Regis: St. Regis Mohamk Tribal Council \& St. Regis Band Council.

Honvillain, Nancy.
1973 A Grammar of Alwesasne Mohàwk.
(Mercury Serles Ethnology Division no. 8)
Ottawa: National Museum of Man.

Bonvillain, Nancy.
1974 Noun Incorporation in Mohawk.
(Mercury Series Ethnology Division no. 10)
Ottawa: National Museum of Man:

Bresnam, Joan.
1970 'On Complementizers: Toward a Syntactic Theory of Complement Types', Foundations of Language $\mathbf{6}: 298$-321.
1972 Theory of Complementation in English Syntax.
Ph.D. Dissertation. MIT.

Caton, Charles.
1969 'Epistemic Qualifiers and Eng1ish Grammar', in Todd, Wm. (ed.), Studies in Philosophical Linguistics. Evanston, Illinois: Great Expectations Pub. pp: 17-54.
 New York: Teachers College Press.

Chafe, Wallace.
1968 'English Questions', PEGS Paper No. 26. Washington, D.C.: Center for Applied Linguistics.

Chang, 'Suk-Jin.
1972 A Generative Study of Discourse with Special Reference to Korean. Ph.D. Dissertation. University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign. Ann Arbor; Michigan: Xerox University Microfilms, 1975.

Chomsky, Noam.
1957 Syntactic Structures. (Janua Linguarum 4). ${ }^{2}$ The Hague: Mouton \& Co.

Churchill, L.
1973 'The Grammar of-Questioning',
(Paper presented at workshop of 23rd Annual Georgetown University Round Table, 1972). Graduate Center, CUNY, 1973.

Cole, Peter.
1974 'Backward Pronominalization and Analogy',
Linguistic Inquiry 5:425-444.

Davison, A:
1975. 'Indirect Speech Acts and What To Do With Them', in Cole, P., and J. Morgan (eds.), Syntax and Semantics, Volume 3: Speech Acts. New York: Academic Press. pp. 143-185.

Ervin-Tripp, S.
1971 'Sociolinguistics', In Fishman, J.A. (ed.), Advances in the Sociology of Language I. The Hague: . Mouton \& Co., 1971. pp. 15-91.

Fillmore, Charles J.
1966 'Deictic. Categories in the Semantics of "come"', Foundations of Language 2:219-227.
1973 'May We 'Come In?', Semfotica 9, 2:97-117.

Firth, J.R.
1935. 'The Technique of Semantics',
-. Trangactions of the Philological Society. (London) (Reprinted in Papers in'Inguistics 1934-1951.' London: Oxford, 1957.)

Fraser, Bruce.
1971 An Examination of the Performative Analysis. Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana University Ifinguistics Club.

Garner, R.
1969 'Caton on Epistemic Qualifiers', in Todd, Wm. (ed.), Stydies in Philosophical Linguistics. Evanston, Illinois: Great Expectations Pub. pp. 55-76.

Givón, Talmy.
1974 'Toward a Discourse Definition of Syntax', (Preliminary draft). Department of Linguistics, UCLA. (December, 1974).

Gordon, David \& George Lakoff.
1971 'Conversational Postulates', Papers from the 7 th Regional Meeting. (1971) Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 63-85.

Green, G.M.
1973 'How to Get People to Do'Things with Words', in Roger W. Shuy (ed.), New Directions in Linguistics. Washington: Georgetown University Press. pp. 51-81.
1974 'The Function of Form and the Form of Function', Papers from the 10th Regional Meeting. (1974) Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 186-197.

Grice, H. P.
1975 'Logic and Conversation', In Cole,P. and J.L. Morgan (eds.), Syntax and Semantics, Volume 3: Speech Acts. New Yark: Acadamic Press. pp. 41-58.

Grosu, Alexander.
1975 'A Note on Analogy',
Linguistic Inquiry 6, 3:468-475."

Holiday, M.A.K., A. McIntosh, and P. Strevens.
1964 The Linguistic Sciences and Language Teaching.
London: Longans (Longan's Linguistics Library).

Holiday, M.A.K.
1967- 'Notes on Transitivity and Theme in English', 1968 , Journal of Linguistics 3:37-81; 3:199-244; 4:179-215.
1970 'Functional Diversity in Language as Seen from a Consideration of Modality and Mood In English', Foundations of Language 6:322-361.
1973 'Talking One's Way In: A Sociolinguistic Perspective on Language and Learning',
(Paper prepared for S.S.R.C. Research Seminar on Language and Learning). The Scottish Council for Research in Education, Edinburgh.

Hankamer, J. $\%$
1974 'On the Non-Cyclic Nature of WH-Clefting', w Papers from the 10th Regional Meeting. (1974)

Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 221-233.

Harries, Helga.
1972 Cleft Sentences, Questions, and Presupposition Sharing. Ph.D. Dissertation. University of Minnesota.

Hewitt, J.N.B.
1903 Iroquoian Cosmology (Part One)
Annual Report No. 21, Bureay of American Ethnology.
1926
Iroquoian Cosmology (Payt Two).
Annual Report No. 43, Bureau of American Ethnology.

## Higgins, R.

1973 Pseudo-Cleft Construction in English. Ph.D. Dissertation. MIT.

Hockett, Charles F.
1958 A Course in Modern Linguistics.
New York: The MacMillan Co.

Huds on, R.A.
1975 'The Meaning of Questions',
Language 51, 1:1-31.

Hundsnurscher, Franz.
1975 'Semantik Der Fragen', ZGL 3:1-14. (Zeitschrift fir germmistische Linguistik)

Hymes, Dell.
1962 'The Ethnography of Speaking', in Gladwin, T. and W.C. Sturtevant (eds.), Anthropology and Human Behaviour. Washington, D.C.: Anthropological Socfety of Washington. pp. 15-53.
1964 'Introduction:' Toward Ethnographies of Commmication', American Anthropologist 66, 2, II:1-33.
1967 'Models of the Interaction of Language and Social Setting', Journal of Social Issues 13, 2:8-28.
1969 'Linguistic Theory and the Functions of Speech'. University of Pennsylvania, umpublished paper.
1971 'Sociolinguistics and the Ethnography of Speaking', Social Anthropology and Language, Edwin Ardener (ed.) Toronto: Tavistock Publications.
1972 'The Scope of Sociolinguistics', R.W. Shuy (ed.) Monograph Series on Languages and Einguistics 25 . 23rd Annual Round Table Meeting, no. 25. Washington, D.C.: Georgetown University Press. .pp. 313-334.

```
    Indian Affairs and Northern Development Department, Government of Canada.
        1970 Linguistic and Cultural Affiliations of Canadian Indian Bands.
        Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development,
        Indian Affairs Branch.
    Irvine, J.
        1974 'Strategies of Status Manipulation in the Wolof Gréeting', in
            Bauman, l. and J. Sherzer (eds.),
        Explorations in the Ethnography of Speaking.
            Cambr1dge, England: Cambridge University Press. pp. 167-191.
        Jackendoff, R.
        1972 Semantic Interpretation in Generative Grammar.
            Cambridge, Massachusetts: MIT Press.
        Jakobson, Roman.
    1960 'Concluding Statement: Linguistics and Poetics', in
            Sebeok, T.A. (ed.), Style in Language.
            Cambridge, Massachusetts: The Technology Press.
            John, Vera P.
        1972 'Styles of Learning-Styles of Teaching: Reflections on the
            Education of Navajo 'Children',
            in Cazden, C.B. et al., 1972. pp. 331-343.
Johnson, D.
    1975 'Why Delete Tense?',
            Inguistic Inquiry 6, 3:481-484.
Karttunen; L.
    1971 'Counterfactual Conditionals'.
            Linguistic Inguiry 2:566-569.
```

Katz, J.J. and P.M. Postal.
1964 An Integrated Theory of Linggistic Descriptions.
MIT Research Monograph No. 26.
Cambridge, Massachusetts: the MIT Press.

Katz, J.J.
1968 'The Logic of Questions',
In Van Rootsefaar, B. and J.F. Staal (eds.),
Logic, Methodology and Philosophy of Science III. (Proceedings of
the 3rd International Congress for Logic, Methodology and Philosophy
of Science, Amsterdam 1967.)
Amsterdam: North Holland Pub. Co. pp. 463-493.
1972 Semantic Theory.
New York: Harper \& Row Pub.

Kaufman, E.S.
1975 Theoretical Responses to Navajo Questions.
Unpublished Ph.D. Dissertation. MIT.

Keenan, Edward and D. Hull.
1973 'The Logical Presuppositions of Questions and Answers',
In Petöfi, Janos S. and Dorothea Franck (Hg.),
Präsuppositionen in Philosophie und Linguistik.
Frankfurt. pp. 441-466.

Kjolseth, R.
1972 'Making Sense: Natural Language and Shared Knowledge in Understanding', in Fishman, J. (ed.), Advances in the Sociology of Language II. The Hague: Mouton \& Co. pp. 50-76.

Kuno, S. and J. Robinson. :
1972 'Multiple WH Questions', Linguistic Inguiry 3:463-487.

Labov, William.
1972 'Rules for Ritual Insults',
in Sudnow, D. (ed.), Studies in Social Interaction. New York: Free Press. pp. 120-169.

Lakoff, George.
1970a Irregularity in Syntax.
New York: Holt, Rinehart \& Winston, Inc.
1970b 'Linguistics and Natural Logic', In Studies in Generative Semantics No. 1. Phonetics Laboratory, University of Michigan.
1971 'On Generative Semantics', in Steinberg, D. and L. Jakobovits (eds.), Semantics: An Interdisciplinary Reader in Philosophy, Linguistics and Psychology. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press. pp. 232-296.
1974 'Syutactic Amalgams',
Papers from the 10 th Regional Meeting. (1974) Chicago: Chicago Linguiatic Society. pp.-321-344.

Lakoff, Robin.
1972 'Language in Context', Language 40, 4:910.
1973 . 'The Logic of Politeness; or, Minding Your $P^{\prime} s$ and $Q^{\prime} s^{\prime}$, Papers from the 9th Regional Meeting. (1973) Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 292-305.

Lang, Ranier.
1970 Enga Questions: Structural and Semantic Studies. Ph.D. Dissertation. Australian National University.

Langacker, Ronald W.
"1969 'An Analysis of English Questions',
Manuscript. San Dego: University of California.

Langacker, Ronald W.
1970 'Eng1ish Question Intonation',
in Sadock, J.M. and A.L. Vanek (eds.),
Studies Presented to Robert B. Lees by His Students.
Papers in Linguistics Monograph Series, No. 1. pp. 139-161.
1974 'The' Question of $Q$ ',
Foundations of Language 11:1-37.
1975 'Functional Stratigraphy',
Papers from the Parasession on Functionalism. (1975)
Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 351-7 397.

Lounsbury, Floyd G. .
1953 Oneida Verb Morphology.
(Yale University Publication in Anthropology No. 48.)
New Haven: Yaie University Press.

Malinowski, B.
1935 Coral Gardens and Their Magic Ir.
London: Allen and Unwin.

Maurault, Olivier.
1930 OKA: Les Vicissitudes d'une Mission Sauvage.
Montréal: Devoir.

McCawley, James D.
1968 'Lexical Insertion In a Transformational Graminar Without Deep Structure', Papers from the 4th Regional Meeting. (1968)
Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 71-80.
1971a 'Tense and Time Reference in Engliah', in Fillmore, C.J. and D.T/. Langendoen (eds.),
Studies in Linguiatic Semantics.
New York: Holt, Rinehaft, and Winston, pp. 97-114.

```
McCawley, James D.
    1971b 'Where Do Noun Phrases Come From?',
                    In Steinberg, D. and L. Jakobovits (eds.), Semantics: An
                    Interdisciplinary Reader in Philosophy, Linguistics and Psychology.
                    Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press. pp. 217-231.
    1972 'Syntactic and Logical Arguments for Semantic Structures',
    Proceedings of the 5th International. Seminar on Theoretical Linguistics,
Tokyo, 1970.
Indiana University Linguistics Club Publication, 1972.
Messieurs de St. Sulpice, Oka, Québec.
1972 'Hommage aux Messieurs de Saint-Sulpice et aux Dames de. 1a
Congrégation a l'accasion du 250ieme Anniversaire de leur venue a Oka.'
Michelson, Gunther.
1973 A Thousand Words of Mohawk.
(Mercury Series Ethnology Division no. 5)
Ottawa: National Museum of Man.
```

Morgan, J.L.
1975 'Some Remarks on the Nature of Sentences', Papers from the Parasession on Functionalism. (1975) Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 433-449.

Muraki, Masatake.
1974 Presupposition and Thematization.

- Tokyo: Kaitalcusha Co.

Philips, Susan U.
1970 'Acquiaition of Rules for Appropriate Speech Usage', in Alatis, James E. (ed.), Georgetown University 21st Armual Round Table.

Washington, D.C.: George Eown University Press. pp. 77-101.

1972 'Participant Structures and Communicative Competence:
Wamm-Springs Children in Commity find Classroom', .
in Cazden, C.B. et al., 1972. pp: 370-394.

Pope, Emily.
1973 'Question-Answering Systemq',
Papers from the 9 th Regional Meeting. (1973)
Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. pp. 482-492.
1975 Questions and Answers in Eng1ish.
Indiana: Indiana University Linguistice Club.

Pgefal, Paul M.
1963 Some Syntactic Rules in Mohawk.
Ph.D. Dissertation. Yale University.
a
Protestant Defence Alliance of, Canada.
1876? The Indians of the Lake of Two Mountains and the Seminary of St. Sulpice.
Montréal: 'Witness' Printing House.

Québec Provincial Government.
1970 Rapport de la Commission D'Etude Sur L'Intëgrité Du
Territoire Du quēbec.
4. Le Domaine Indien, et 4.5 Inventaire des Reserves et Etablisaements Indiens.

Ross, John R.
1967 Constraints on Variables in Syntax.
Ph.D. Dissertation. MTT.
(Reproduced by the Indiana University Linguistics Club, 1968.)

Ross, John R.
1970 'On Declarative Sentences',
in Jacobs, R.A. and P.S. Rosenbdum (eds.), Readings in English Transformational Grammar. Waltham, Massachusetts: Ginn: pp. 222-272.
1972 'Act'.
-
In Davidson, D. and G.H. Harman (eds.),
Semantics of Natural Language.
Dordrecht: Reidel Pub. Co. pp. 498-544.

Sacks, Harvey.
1972 'Adjacency Pairs',
Unpublished lectures, no. 1.
University of California at Irvine, April 4, 1972.

Sadock, J.M.
1969 'Super-hypersentences',
Papers in Linguistics 1:1-16.
1970 'Whimperatives',
In Sadock, J.M. and A.L. Vanek (eds.),
Studies Presented to Robert B. Lees by His Studente. Edmonton, Alberta:, Linguistic Research. pp. 223-239.

1974 Toward a Linguistic Theory of Speech Acts.
New York: Academic Press.
1975 'The Soft," Interpretive Underbelly of Generative Semantics', In Cole, P. and J.L. Morgan (eds.), Syntax and Semantics, Volume 3: Speech Acts.
New York: Academic Press. pp. 383-396.

Salmond, A.
1974 'Rituals of Encounter among the Maori: Sociolinguistic Study of a Scene',
in Bauman, R. and Sherzer, J. (eds.),
Explorations in the Ethnography of Speaking. Cambridge, Eng1and: Cambridge University Press. pp. 192-212.

Schaćhter, Paul.
1968. 'Interrogative',
in Stockwel1, R.P., P. Schachter, and B. Hall (eds.),
Integration of Transformational Theories on English Syntax. ESD-TR-68, Volumes I and II. pp. 625-657.
. Los Angeles: University of California Department of Linguistics.
1973 'Focus and Relativization'.
Language 49, 1:19-46.
,
Schegloff, Emmanuel.
1973 Paper given at the Conference on Face-to-Face Interaction. Chicago: September, 1973.

Schreiber, Peter A.
1972 'Style Disjuncts' and the Performative Analysis', Linguistic Inquiry 3:321-348.

Scott, Rev. William.
1883 REPORT Relating to the Affairs of the Oka Indians.
(Made to the Superintendent General of Indian Affairs.)
Ottawa: Maclean, Roger \& Co.

Skinner, B, F.
1957
Verbal Behavior.،
New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts.

Stockwell, R.P., P. Schachter, and B. Hall.
1968 Integration of Transformational Theories on English Syntax.
ESD-TR-68, Volumes I and II.
Los Angeles: University of California Department of Linguistics.

Stockwel1, R.P., P. Schachter ${ }_{3}$,
1973 The Major Syntactic Structures of English. Montreal: Holt, Rinehart \& Winston, Inc.

Tuck, James A.
1971 'The Iroquois Confederacy',
Scientific American (March 1971) 224, 12:32-42.
Wiser
1975 $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { Ann. } \\ \text { 'How to Not Answer a Question: Purposive Devices in Conversational } \\ \text { Strategy', } \\ \frac{\text { Papers from the 11th Regional Meeting. (1975) }}{\text { Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society. 'Pp. 649-660. }}\end{array}\right.$

Williams, Marianne Mithun
1974a A Grammar of Tuscarora:
Ph.D. Dissertation. Yale University. (To be published by
Garland Publishing Co.)
1974b 'Word Order in Tuscarora', in Foster, Michael K. (ed.), Papers in Linguistics from the 1972 Conference on Iroquoian Research.
Ottawa: National Museum of Man.

Woodbury, Mani J.
1975 Noun Incorporation in Onondaga.
Ph.D. Dissertation. Yale University.


APPENDIX I.

## HISTORY OF KANESATAKE

The Mohawk people, or the People of the Flint, are one of the six tribes of the Six Iroquois Nations. According to their legends, ${ }^{1}$ they used to live 'where the grass grew tall, and where the buffalo lived (The Great Plains). They lived beside the Great River (The Mississippi).' There they dwelt near the villages of the Wolf Nation (The Pawnees). For some reason, the Iroquois packed their belongings on their backs and migrated eastward to many areas: Georgian Bay (Hurrong), along the Niagara River, south of Lake Erie and Lake Ontario, east of the Appalachian Mountains (Cherokees) and down the St. Lawrence. Finally, the Mohawk People settled along the St. Lawrence near whexe Montréal now exists. ${ }^{2}$

With the coming of the French, including Champlain, Maisonneuve and others, the various Roman Catholic religious orders arrived also. One of these, the Messieurs de St. Sulpice received the Island and the Seigniory of Montréal in 1677 from the King of France for the sole purpose of setting up a mision for the protection, maintenance and the religious instruction of the Indians. This mission was built at the foot of Mount Royal, but was subsequently moved, along with the Indians; to Sault au Recollet nearby because of the displeasure it caused both the Sulpicians and the French immigrants. During this time period, the Indians were composed of families from the Mohawk, Algonquin and Nipissing tribes, with different linguistic affiliations.

There were two further 1and grants given to the Messieurs de St. Sulpice by the King of France in the region of the Lake of the Two Mountains.

One was requested in 1717 and confirmed 1718 , 'to enable them (the Sulpicians) to transfer there the mission of the Indians of Sault au Récollet'. ${ }^{3}$ This transfer took place a few years later in 1721.4 Ownership of adjoining lands was requested in 1733 by the St. Sulpice order with the intimation that the Indians needed more land for their livelihood and in the following words: 'the Indians of the Mission of the said Lake of Two Mountains, being accustomed to often' change their place of abode, and to render the said land more profitable' (doubtless for the Indians), 'it would, therefore, be necessary to extend the said land further than the three leagues, as set forth in the said Deed of one thousand seven hundred and eighteen., 5 Thus it was that the Messieurs de St. Sulpice acquired an extensive portion of land on the north shore of the Lake of the Two Mountains. In 1733-1734, the Indians divided into two groups on this land: the Iroquois and the Hurons to the west of the Sulpician church and the Algonquins and the Nipissings on the east side of the church.

However, the Messieurs did not adhere strictly to the legal agreement with the French crown. They took unjust liberties with the land appointed for the Indians and sold large portions to non-Indians. ${ }^{6}$ As well, they used large agricultural plots for themselves and their benefit. While the Messieurs cut wood (using cheap Indian labour) and sold it, they forbid the Indians to cut any more than what they themselves could use; for minor infractions of this 'law', there were numerous cases of the Messieurs fmprisoning and beating Indian men and women. ${ }^{7}$ This mistreatment on a large scale led to many frictions in the community.

In 1781, and numerous times afterwards, the Indians appealed to the Government in regard to their, claims on the land. In one case in 1788-1789,

Chief Augneeta asked for a new deed. The Law Officers of the Crown declared: 'whatever ideas they might have entertained of a title, we cannot perceive any such right in them'. 8 . Every subsequent attempt by the Indians to obtain title to the land met with the same response: the land belonged to the Domain of the Crown, i.e. the Seminary.

As these conflicts continued, they naturally destroyed the confidence of the Indians of Oka in the rectitude and sincerity of their spiritual guides. Accordingly, the Indians, in 1868, resolved to abandon the Church of Rome, ${ }^{9}$ and to use such means as they believed they could legally employ to cause the priests to leave the place and Seigniory altogether.

After the conquest of Canada, the purpose was entertained by the British government to confiscate all the properties held by the Sulpicians, the Récollets and the Jesuits. Action, however, was fully taken only on the estates of the Jesuits; the others were allowed to retain their property. No legal titles were, however, given to these. properties; the occupants were merely left in possession.

The British government sought by the Act of Confirmation in 1841 to hold the Sulpicians to their legal commitments (under the Original Grants from the King of France) to the Indian people and to the use of the land for the welfare of the Indians. This was agreed to by the Messieurs; however. within a few years, the Seminary endeavoured to get rid of a part of thege obligations, and to become absolute owner of the Seigniory of Two Mountains, by inducing the government of the day to set apart 1,600 acres of land, in the township of Doncaster, to the north of Montreal, to which the Indians were to
be removed. The Seminary thus purposed to remain as absolute owner of the lands which were originally obtained rather for the Indians than its own use. About the time 1868-1870, the Methodist Mission commenced in the Lake of Two Mountains region, and a small, wooden church was built on the property of an Indian woman. When the Sulpicians nefariously won a court cage and fore this church down in 1875 because the building was 'trespasising' on their land, the Indians ain were demanding justice from the government. Was not the land to be used for their purposes? It appeared not. However, after some years of deliberation, the government set aside 25,582 acres of reserve land in the Township of Gibson in the Muskoka District of Ontario. In 1882, 23 families went there and another 12 families arrived in 1883 from the Lake of Two Mountains.

Between 1868 and 1881, tw-ithirds of the Indians at Lake of Two Mountains had become Protestant; these represented the Iroqpeis (as well as a few Algonquins). The other one-third comprised of Algonquins who remained Roman Catholic. Those that went to the Gibson Reserve had become Methodist and represented one-third of the Indians that had been at Oka (which had been so called since 1867, after an Algonquin word 'oka' which means 'poisson doré or perch). This reserve was paid for by the Seminary, who also agreed to erect suitable houses and pay the expenses of removal and indemn'ify the Indians for such improvements as they may have made at Oka. $\dagger$

However, the land in Oka was still held by the Sulpicians and the 111-feelings of the Indians towards the Messieurs still smouldered because of their injustices. So it was that in 1890, the Algonquins were given land in Maniwak1, 70 miles north of Hull, Quabec, so that they might hunt. Yet, it

was not until 1945 that the federal government bought from the Sulpicians parcels of land (totalling 2,300 acres) occupled by the Indians remanent in Oka, for the benefit of them. This ia the situation today in oka. The land is not set up as a reserve, because the land is owned by the govefnment as Crown Land, nevertheless, the Mohawke can build, farm and cut trees on this property,

Today the two minority groups, the Nipissings and the Algonquins, have been assimilated inguistically by the dominant Mohawks. In 1970, the Kanesatake population was recorded to be 777; ${ }^{10}$ but this does not represent the number of Mohawk speakers. Almost everyone older than eighteen has an active knowledge of Mohawk. Those below eighteen who do not speak the language are most likely to understand it. With a few monolingual exceptions among the older people, there in an active knowledge on the part of everyone of either English or French or both, The younger people today might know Mohawk, but English and/or French dominate due to the influence of achools and television. English perhaps predominates over French because of the former historical ties with the Protestant rather than Catholic Church, which han perpetuated the use of the English language over the subsequent generations.: However, most of the white people in the village of oka are french-speaking, therefore, a knowledge of French is necessary for the Mohawk.

POPULATION IN OKA ${ }^{11}$.

\#In 1882-1883, one-third of the Mohawks left for Gibson; this was 150 persons.
6 In 1890, most of the Algonquins went to Maniwaki; perhaps the Nipissings went there too, being also a hunting tribe.
*The real population resident in Oka than was 495, not 777. The latter number indicates those Indians inscribed under the Federal law for the Indians. However, not all live on their landa for reasons such as work, etc. The number 495 indiqates the number of Indians who actually lived in Oka in 1970. The real population in 1973 is 541, as shown.
${ }^{@}$ There was a small pox epidemic after this date which decimated the Indian population.

OKA STATISTICS
Different statiatics were obtained from three governmental statis-
tical organizations.

1. STATISTICS QUEBEC. (June, 1973).

Oka sur le lac 1456
Oka (village)
Oka Indian Reserve 541
2. STATISTICS CANADA. (1971 National Census).

Oka 1424
3. DEPARTMENT OF INDIAN AFFAIRS, QUEBEC. (April 18, 1973). Oka Indian Reserve:

On Reserve 541
Off Regerve 282
TOTAL 823

NOTE: $\quad 50 \%$ of Indians speak Mohawk, English, and Freñch $20 \%$ of Indians speak Mohazk and English. 20\% of Indians speak Mohawk and French

10\% of Indians speak only French
Therefore, $70 \%$ of Indians speak English
90\% of Indians speak Mohawk
80\% of Indians speak French
There are no Niplasings, most likely because they mixed with Mohawks long ago.
There are bout 30 'Algonquing' who have also intermarried with the Mohawks.

## FOOTNOTES TO APPENDIX

1. Aren Akweks, Miqration of the Iroquois, pp. 3-5. Note: There is general disagreement among most reputable anthropologists as to the homeland of the Iroquois. Some scholars maintain that the Iroquois came originally from Georgia and the Carolinas, the home of the 'civilized' Cherokees. It has also been suggested that they came from the north, moving down the valley of the St. Lawrence under preseure from the advancing Algonquins. One source even places the Iroquois homeland in the Pacific Northwest. Yet according to James A. Tuck, "The Iroquois Confederacy", Scientific American 3, 1971,
'Not until recently has it been realized that the Iroquois culture might aimply have arisen in the area where the European colonists first encountered $1 t^{\prime}$,
p. 32
that is, upper New York State. Supposedly, there is archaeological evidence collected at more than a score of sites over the past two decades that shows the Onondagas--the key tribe in the Confederacy--developed into full-fledged Iroquois from a preceding level of pre-Iroquois culture in the years after A.D. 1000 without ever leaving a $25-b y-15$ mile area in upper New York State near Syracuse. Whether one can assume that what is true of the Onondagas is true also for the other five tribes in the Confederacy is a matter of pure speculation.
2. It 1670 , a number of individual Iroquois, converted by French priests, left their homeland in what is now New York State to live near Montreal. Their descendants now live at Caughnawaga, St. Regis, Oka and Gibson, See Indian Affairs and Northern Development Department, Government of Canada, 1970, Linguistic and Cultural Affiliations of Canadian Indian Bands, p. 9..
3. Original Grant, 1718; in Beta, 1879, Contribution....
4. O. Maurault in OKA: Les Vicissitudes...., 1930, adds that theptransport of the Indian cabins from Sault au Recollet to Oke was not terminated until 1734; (See also, Messieurs de St. Sulpice, 1972, Hommage...., pp. 4-7). Maurault adds that there were Iroquois, Hurons and Algonquins that emigrated from Sault au Recollet to Oka, and that they were joined there by the Nipissings in 1727 from the Mission of L'Ile aux Tourtes.
5. Second Grant, 1735; in Beta, 1879, Contribution.... .
6. Beta, 1879, Contribution... , pp. 53-54.
7. Beta, ibid., pp. 54-55; 57-58.
8. Scott, Rev. William, 1883, Report ..., p. 26.
9. Protestant Defence Alliance of Canada, 1876?, The Indians ...., pp. 2-5.
10. Indian Affairs and Northern Development Department, Government of Canada, ibid., p. 9.
11. Ibid., p. 9; Also Quebec Provincial Government, 1970, Rapport ..., pp. 80-81.

[^0]:    * $n(e) 1: ? 1+n i: ? 1$. The following morphonemic rule has been applied: ne $* \overline{n /} \bar{\eta}$. ne is contracted before a constituent starting with a vowel.

[^1]:    *St stands for atatement.

[^2]:    *     - ? is in the process of disappearing in Mohawk spoken at Kanesatake:

[^3]:    ${ }^{*} C$ stands for correction.

[^4]:    *Rq stands for request.

[^5]:    C stands for correction.

[^6]:    *kni:se?'1s a contracted form of ok ne 1:se? 'and NOM you'. ;

